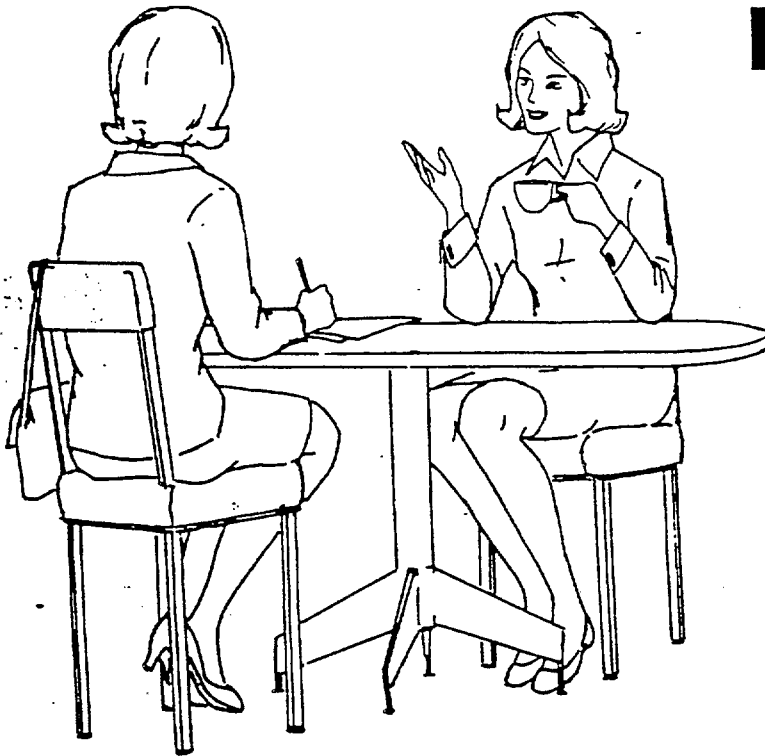


HIS-100
(1978)

HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY

Interviewer's

Manual



U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE
Bureau of the Census

Acting as Collecting Agent for U.S. Public Health Service

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

PART A

THE HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY
AND YOU

CHAPTER 1. DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY	A1-1
A Purpose of the Health Interview Survey	A1-1
1 General	A1-1
2 Examples of uses of the data	A1-2
a Helps give direction to health expenditures	A1-2
b Occurrence and severity of illness and disability ...	A1-2
c Control of accidents	A1-3
d Health of the aged	A1-3
e Health education and research	A1-3
f Health facilities - hospital care, rehabilitation, insurance, etc.	A1-4
g Factors related to various diseases	A1-4
3 Who uses the data	A1-4
B Sponsorship of the survey	A1-4
1 The Health Interview Survey (HIS)	A1-5
2 The Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (HANES)	A1-5
3 The Hospital Discharge Survey (HDS)	A1-5
4 The Health Records Survey (HRS)	A1-5
C Design of the HIS sample	A1-5
1 Selection of sample PSU's	A1-5
2 Sample ED's and segments	A1-6
3 Sample units	A1-6
4 Sample of newly constructed units	A1-6
5 Sample of special places	A1-6
6 The quarterly sample	A1-7
D Scope of the survey	A1-7
E Information accorded confidential treatment	A1-7
CHAPTER 2. YOUR JOB PERFORMANCE IN HIS	A2-1
A General	A2-1
B Basic field duties	A2-1
C Additional duties	A2-1
D Standards of performance for interviewers	A2-2
1 Production standards	A2-2
a Planning your travel route	A2-2
b Reduction of callbacks	A2-3

	<u>Page</u>
2	Quality of interviewing..... A2-3
a	Interviewer's error rate..... A2-4
b	Field evaluation of interviewer's work..... A2-4
3	Performance rating..... A2-4

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<u>PART D</u>	
HOW TO INTERVIEW HIS	
CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION	D1-1
A Description of Materials	D1-1
1 HIS-1 Questionnaire	D1-1
2 Information Card Booklet	D1-2
3 Calendar Card	D1-4
B General Interviewing Instructions	D1-5
1 Symbols, Type Face, and Use of Pronouns	D1-5
2 How to Make Entries	D1-7
3 More Than One Questionnaire	D1-11
4 Shaded Areas (Zipitone)	D1-12
5 Persons Under 17	D1-12
6 Events Occurring During Past Two Weeks	D1-12
7 Footnotes and Comments	D1-13
8 How to Record Answers	D1-13
C Conducting the Interview	D1-13
CHAPTER 2 HOUSEHOLD PAGE	D2-1
Item 1, Book of Books	D2-1
Items 2 through 5, Identification	D2-1
Item 6, Address	D2-2
Item 7, Year Built	D2-4
Item 8, Type of Living Quarters	D2-5
Question 9, Coverage	D2-6
Item 10, Questions 11 and 12, Tenure and Land Use	D2-7
Question 13, Number of Rooms	D2-10
Question 14, Number of Bedrooms	D2-10
Question 15, Telephone Number	D2-11
Items 16 and 17, Interview Observed, Interviewer's Name and Code	D2-11
Item 18, Noninterviews	D2-12
Item 19, Record of Calls	D2-13
Item 20, Record of Callbacks Required	D2-16
Item 21, Record of Additional Calls	D2-17
Item 22, Noninterview for Persons 19+	D2-18

	<u>Page</u>
CHAPTER 3. PROBE PAGES	D3-1
A Eligible Respondent for Questions 1 and 2	D3-1
B Eligible Respondent for Remaining Part of Questionnaire	D3-1
1 17 or 18 Years Olds	D3-1
2 Children	D3-2
3 Adults Not Related	D3-2
C Exception to Eligible Respondent Rules	D3-2
D Return Call May Be Necessary	D3-3
Question 1, Household Membership	D3-4
Question 2, Relationship	D3-13
Question 3, Date of Birth, Age, Race, and Sex	D3-15
Selecting the Condition list	D3-16
Item C and Reference Dates	D3-17
Question 4, Marital Status	D3-20
Item H, At Home	D3-21
Questions 5 through 9, Two-Week Activity Limitation ..	D3-22
Question 10, Condition Causing Two-Week Limitation	D3-28
Question 11, Two-Week Accidents or Injuries	D3-30
Question 12, Two-Week Dental Visits	D3-32
Question 13, Last Saw Dentist	D3-33
Question 14, Two-Week Doctor Visits	D3-34
Question 15, Two-Week Shots, X-Rays, Tests, and Examinations	D3-35
Question 16, Two-Week Medical Advice by Phone	D3-36
Question 17, Condition Causing Two-Week Medical Advice	D3-37
Question 18, Twelve-Month Doctor Visits	D3-39
Questions 19 and 20, Major Activity	D3-41
Question 21, Limitation of Activity for Children 1-5 Years of Age.....	D3-43
Question 22, Limitation of Activity for Children Under One Year of Age	D3-43
Question 23, Retired or "17-Something Else"	D3-44
Question 24, Limited in Kind or Amount of Work or Housework	D3-45
Questions 25 and 26, "6-16 Something Else," or "Going to School"	D3-46
Question 27, Limited in ANY WAY	D3-47
Question 28, How Long Limited and Cause	D3-48
Question 29, Hospitalizations Since Specified Date	D3-50
Question 30, Stays in Nursing Homes, Etc.	D3-51
Question 31, Check on Question 29	D3-52
Question 32, Condition List	D3-54
Question 33, General Health Question	D3-64
Item BD, Question 34, 12 mo. Bed Days	D3-64
Item R, Respondent.....	D3-65

CHAPTER 4. CONDITION PAGE	D4-1
A General Procedure	D4-1
B Order of Filling Condition Pages	D4-1
C Extra Questionnaires Needed for More than Six Conditions ..	D4-1
D Types of Reporting Problems	D4-1
1 Dental Conditions	D4-1
2 Pregnancy and Delivery	D4-1
3 Mental Illness	D4-2
4 Operations	D4-2
5 Refused	D4-2
6 Reaction to Drugs	D4-2
7 Caution about Deciding Two Conditions Are the Same	D4-2
E Questions 3a-e, Condition Details	D4-3
F When to Complete Separate Condition Pages	D4-4
G Questions 4-8, Restricted Activity Past Two Weeks	D4-5
1 Refer to Calendar Card	D4-6
2 Injuries Occurring Less Than Three Months Ago	D4-6
3 In Bed or in a Hospital	D4-6
4 Check for Number of Days Reported in Questions 7 and 8 .	D4-6
5 Check Between Questions 5, 6, 7 and 8	D4-6
6 Differences Between Restricted Activity Days in Probe Questions 5-9 and on the Condition Page	D4-6
H Questions 17-21, Accidents and Injuries	D4-6
1 Multiple Injuries	D4-6
2 Separate Accident Requires a Separate Condition Page ...	D4-7
3 Condition Caused by an Accident That Happened More Than Three Months ago	D4-7
4 Two or More Present Effects	D4-7
Item 1, Person Number and Name of Condition	D4-7
Question 2, When Last Saw or Talked to Doctor	D4-8
Interviewer Check Item A1	D4-11
Question 3a, Name of Condition	D4-13
Question 3b, Cause of Condition	D4-14
Question 3c, Kind of Trouble	D4-15
Question 3d, How Allergy or Stroke Affects Person ...	D4-17
Question 3e, Part of Body Affected	D4-18
Interviewer Check Item A2	D4-19
Question 4, Restricted Activity, Past Two Weeks	D4-21
Question 5, Days Cut Down in Past Two Weeks	D4-22
Question 6, Bed Days in Past Two Weeks	D4-23
Question 7, Days Lost From Work for Persons 17 Years of Age or Older	D4-24
Question 8, Days Lost From School for Persons 6-16 Years	D4-25

Question 9, Onset of Condition D4-26
 Interviewer Check Item A3 D4-27
 Question 10, Vision Question D4-28
 Item AA, When to Complete Questions 11-16 D4-29
 Question 11, Now Take Any Medicine or Treatment D4-30
 Questions 12 and 13, Ever Had Surgery/Hospitalization
 for Condition D4-30
 Question 14, Number of Doctor Visits During the
 Past 12 Months D4-31
 Question 15, Bed/Work Loss Days During Past 12
 Months D4-31
 Question 16, Condition Bothers D4-32
 Interviewer Check Item A4 D4-33
 Question 17, When Did the Accident (or injury) Occur D4-33
 Question 18, Effects of Accident or Injury D4-34
 Question 19, Where Did the Accident Happen D4-36
 Question 20, At Work When Accident Happened D4-37
 Question 21, Motor Vehicle Involved D4-38

CHAPTER 5. DOCTOR VISITS PAGES D5-1

A General Procedure D5-1
 B Two or More Doctors Seen on Same Visit D5-1
 C Visit to Doctor and Laboratory on Same Visit D5-1
 D Consistency Check D5-1
 E Mass Visits D5-2
 F Special Note on Frequent Doctor Visits for the Same
 Person D5-2
 Item 1, Person Number D5-3
 Question 2, Date of Visit D5-4
 Question 3, Place of Visit D5-5
 Question 4, Kind of Doctor D5-6
 Question 5, Doctor Seen or Talked To D5-7
 Question 6, Purpose of Visit D5-8
 Question 7, Location of Place D5-10
 Question 8, How Long it Took D5-11
 Interviewer Check Item P1 D5-11

CHAPTER 6. HOSPITAL PAGE D6-1

A General Procedure D6-1
 B Consistency Check D6-1
 C Use the Appropriate Word When Asking the Question D6-1
 D Special Note on Frequent Hospitalizations for the Same
 Person D6-1
 E Check With Question 6 or 15 of Appropriate Condition Page
 Item 1, Person Number D6-3
 Question 2, Date Entered Hospital D6-4
 Question 3, Name and Address of Hospital D6-6

	<u>Page</u>
Question 4, Number of Nights in Hospital	D6-7
Question 5, Nights in Past 12 Months and Two Weeks; in Hospital Last Sunday Night	D6-8
Question 6, Condition Causing Hospitalization	D6-9
Question 7, Operations Performed	D6-11
Questions 8 and 9, Place of Residence	D6-13
Question 10, How Long it Took	D6-13
 CHAPTER 7. HEALTH INSURANCE	 D7-1
Questions 1-3, Medicare Coverage	D7-1
Question 4, Health Insurance	D7-2
Questions 5 and 6, Details of Plan	D7-5
Item I and Question 7, Coverage	D7-6
 CHAPTER 8. USUAL SOURCE OF CARE	 D8-1
Question 1, Usual Place	D8-1
Question 2, Kind of Place	D8-2
Question 3, One Particular Doctor	D8-3
Question 4, Location of Place	D8-3
Question 5, How Long it Takes	D8-3
Question 6, Same or Other Place	D8-4
Question 7, Beverage Consumption No usual Place	D8-4
Question 8, Cigarette Smoking Place of last visit	D8-4
 CHAPTER 9. BLOOD DONOR PAGE	 D9-1
Interviewer Check Item D	D9-1
Question 1, Gave Blood Past 12 months	D9-1
Questions 2 and 3, EVER Given or Sold Blood	D9-2
Question 4, Ever Asked in Person	D9-2
Item R1, Respondent	D9-3
 CHAPTER 10. PERSON PAGES	 D10-1
Question 1, Service in the Armed Forces	D10-1
Question 2, Details of Service	D10-2
Question 3, Retirement Payments or Pension	D10-3
Questions 4 and 5, Supplement Income	D10-4
Questions 6-8, Health Care Coverage	D10-5

	<u>Page</u>
Question 9, Height and Weight	D10-7
Question 10, Education	D10-7
Question 11, Racial Background	D10-9
Question 12, National Origin or Ancestry	D10-10
Question 13, Work Status in Past Two Weeks	D10-11
Question 14, Industry, Occupation and Class of Workers	D10-13
Question 15, Family Income	D10-33
Questions 16 and 17	D10-35
 CHAPTER 11. TABLE X AND ITEM E	 D11-1
Table X	D11-1
Item E	D11-2
 CHAPTER 12. PROCEDURES FOR EXTRA UNITS AND MERGED UNITS	 D12-1
A EXTRA Units	D12-1
B Merged Units	D12-1
 CHAPTER 13. NONINTERVIEW HOUSEHOLDS	 D13-1
A General	D13-1
B Questionnaires for Noninterviews	D13-2
C How to Report Type A Noninterviews	D13-2
1 Refusal	D13-2
2 No One at Home	D13-2
3 Temporarily Absent	D13-2
4 Other.....	D13-3
D Type B and C Noninterviews	D13-4
 CHAPTER 14. FAMILY MEDICAL EXPENSES SUPPLEMENT	 D14-1

PART E

INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES AND ADMINISTRATIVE

CHAPTER 1. INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES.....	E1-1
A How to Begin the Interview.....	E1-1
1 Introduce Yourself to the Respondent.....	E1-1
2 Conforming to the Privacy Act of 1974.....	E1-1
3 Further Explanation of the Survey.....	E1-3
B Your Own Manner.....	E1-4
C How to Ask the Questions.....	E1-5
1 Ask Each Question as Instructed.....	E1-5
2 Listen to the Respondent.....	E1-6
3 Repeat the Question.....	E1-6
4 Repeat the Answer.....	E1-6
5 Avoid Influencing the Respondent.....	E1-6
6 Information Given Out of Turn or Volunteered.....	E1-7
7 Do Not "Practice Medicine".....	E1-7
8 Pacing the Interview.....	E1-8
D Probing.....	E1-8
1 When to Probe.....	E1-8
2 How to Probe.....	E1-8
E Recording Information Correctly.....	E1-10
F Review of Work.....	E1-10
1 At Close of Interview.....	E1-10
2 Prior to Transmittal.....	E1-11
G "Thank You" Letters.....	E1-12
H Use of Telephone.....	E1-12
CHAPTER 2. ADMINISTRATIVE.....	E2-1
A Transmittal of Materials.....	E2-1
APPENDIX A TO PART E—CONFIDENTIAL NATURE OF INFORMATION COLLECTED IN NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEYS.....	E2-2
APPENDIX B TO PART E—DIAGNOSTIC ERROR CODES.....	E2-3

HIS-100
(1978)

PART A

THE HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY AND YOU

HIS-100
(1978)

CHAPTER 1

DESCRIPTION OF THE SURVEY

A Purpose of the Health Interview Survey

1 General

The basic purpose of the Health Interview Survey is to obtain information about the amount and distribution of illness, its effects in terms of disability and chronic impairments, and the kind of health services people receive.

The Health Interview Survey is part of the National Health Survey, which began in May 1957. Prior to that time, the last nationwide survey of health had been conducted in 1935-36. Many developments affecting the national health had taken place in the intervening years:

The Nation went from depression to prosperity and through two wars.

"Wonder drugs" such as penicillin were discovered and put into use.

Public and private health programs were enlarged.

Hospitalization and other health insurance plans broadened their coverage to protect many more people.

Increased research programs were providing information leading to the cure, control or prevention of such major diseases as heart disease, cancer, tuberculosis, muscular dystrophy, and polio through the development of products like the Salk Polio Vaccine.

Despite extensive research on individual diseases in the years 1937-1957, one important element had been missing. We had only piecemeal information from the people themselves on their illness and disability or the medical care they obtained. Many persons although sick or injured never became a "health statistic," since requirements for reporting illnesses were limited to hospitalized illnesses and certain contagious diseases.

In recognition of the fact that current information on the Nation's health was inadequate, and that national and regional health statistics are essential, the Congress authorized a continuing National Health Survey (Public Law 652 of the 84th Congress). Since May 1957, the United States Public Health Service has regularly collected health statistics under congressional authority.

2 Examples of
uses of the
data

How is the information obtained from the National Health Survey used? Here are some examples taken from a discussion of the program before the Congress.

a Helps give
direction
to health
expenditures

Total health expenditures, both public and private, run into many billions of dollars a year. Better statistical information helps to give more effective direction to the expenditure of these large sums.

b Occurrence
and severity
of illness
and dis-
ability

Data on health statistics are valuable tools for the public health officer. The nationwide system of reporting communicable disease has been an important factor in the reduction, and in some instances virtual eradication, of some diseases which were chief causes of illness, disability, and even death several generations ago. Knowledge of the number and location of many diseases made it possible to develop effective programs of immunization, environmental sanitation, and health education which are essential factors in their control.

HIS-100
(1978)

Today, chronic illness and disability, among both adults and children, constitute our greatest public health challenge. Chronic illness and disability lower the earning power, living standards, and the general well-being of individuals and families. They reduce the Nation's potential output of goods and services and, in advanced stages, burden individuals, families and communities with high cost of care and assistance. The basic public health principle to be applied is the same: Prevention. Better information on occurrence and severity of diseases and disability are needed in order to prevent their occurrence.

c Control of accidents

Programs for effective control of accidents are still in their infancy. Statistics on the cause and frequency of nonfatal as well as fatal accidents of various types help to shape accident prevention programs and measure their success.

d Health of the aged

There is nationwide interest in prolonging the effective working life of the aged and aging. Knowledge of the health status of people in their middle and later years is essential to effective community planning for the health, general welfare, and continued activity of older persons.

e Health education and research

Governmental health programs have their counterparts in many of the national and local voluntary associations and organizations. These associations collect many millions of dollars annually, to promote research and education in such fields as polio-myelitis, cancer, lung disease, heart disease, mental health, crippling conditions, multiple sclerosis, alcoholism, and so on.

Before Congress authorized the continuing National Health Survey, these organizations had to rely on mortality statistics almost exclusively as a source of information about the disease or condition with which they are principally concerned. Current health statistics produced by the National Health Survey aid such groups greatly in planning their activities and expenditures.

- f Health facilities - hospital care, rehabilitation, insurance, etc.
- The growth of prepayment coverage under voluntary health insurance has increased the demand for the kind of illness statistics which can provide reliable estimates of the number of people who will be ill for a given number of weeks or months. Illness statistics provide an improved measurement of need for hospitals and other health facilities and assist in planning for their more effective distribution. Public school authorities are aided in their planning for the special educational problems of mentally retarded or physically handicapped children. Vocational rehabilitation programs, public officials and industries concerned with manpower problems and industrial safety and health measures, the insurance industry and the pharmaceutical and appliance manufacturers are also greatly assisted by reliable statistics on illness and disability.
- g Factors related to various diseases
- Furthermore, statistical information of this kind is an additional tool for medical research. Study of data showing this relationship between certain economic, geographic or other factors and the various diseases indicate new avenues of exploration and suggest hypotheses for more precise testing.
- 3 Who uses the data
- The principal users of the data are the United States Public Health Service, State and local health departments, public and private welfare agencies, medical schools, medical research organizations and corporations engaged in the manufacture of drugs and medical supplies. Many other organizations and individuals also use the data.
- B Sponsorship of the Survey
- The National Health Survey is sponsored by the United States Public Health Service, which is a part of the Department of Health, Education and Welfare. Because of the Bureau's broad experience in conducting surveys, we conduct the interviewing for the Public Health Service. The findings of the survey are analyzed and published regularly by the Public Health Service.
- The National Health Survey is not a single survey but a continuing program of surveys which includes the following:

HIS-100
(1978)

- 1 The Health Interview Survey (HIS)

The Health Interview Survey, which is covered in this Manual, is the one which you will be working on most of the time. It is often referred to simply as "HIS" to distinguish it from the other surveys which are described below.
 - 2 The Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (HANES)

The Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, as the name suggests, collects health information primarily by means of an actual clinical examination. Census interviewing plays an important role in this survey in that it identifies the representative sample of persons who are to be asked to participate in the examinations. The latter are conducted by doctors and dentists from the Public Health Service.
 - 3 The Hospital Discharge Survey (HDS)

The Hospital Discharge Survey collects information on hospital stays for persons discharged from short stay hospitals, such as date of stay, age, race, sex, marital status, diagnosis, and operations.
 - 4 The Health Records Survey (HRS)

The Health Records Survey collects information on health and related services by examining the records in places in which people receive medical services, such as hospitals and other places which provide medical, nursing, and personal care.
- C Design of the HIS sample
- The Health Interview Survey is based on a sample of the entire civilian noninstitutional population of the United States. Over the course of a year, a total of approximately 40,000 households are interviewed. These households are located in the 50 states and the District of Columbia.
- 1 Selection of sample PSU's

The HIS sample is designed as follows:

 - (a) All the counties in the United States, as reported in the most recent Decennial Census, are examined.
 - (b) Counties which have similar characteristics are grouped together. These characteristics include geographic region, size and rate of growth of population, principal industry, type of agriculture, etc.

- (c) From each group, one or a set of counties is selected to represent all of the counties in the group. The selected counties (or sets of counties) are called primary sampling units, which we abbreviate to PSU. There are 376 PSU's in the HIS sample.

2 Sample ED's and segments

Within each PSU:

- (a) A sample of Census Enumeration Districts (ED's) is selected.
- (b) Each selected ED is divided into either small land areas or groups of addresses. These land areas and groups of addresses are called segments.
- (c) Each segment contains addresses which are assigned for interview in one or more samples. There are five types of segments: Area, Permit, Address, Cen-Sup, and Special place.

3 Sample units

Depending on the type of segment, you will either interview at units already designated on a listing sheet, or you will list the units at a specific address and interview those on designated lines of the listing sheet. In either case it is a sample of addresses, not persons or families.

4 Sample of newly constructed units

In areas where building permits are issued for new construction (Permit Areas), we select a sample of building permits issued since the last Decennial Census. These addresses are assigned as permit segments.

In places where no building permits are required (Non-Permit Areas), newly constructed units are listed and interviewed in area segments. In Non-Permit Areas, only Area segments are assigned.

5 Sample of special places

Some sample units are located in places with special living arrangements, such as dormitories, institutions, convents, or mobile home parks. Special place segments are composed of special places which were identified in the 1970 Decennial Census. Units in special places which were not identified as such in the 1970 Census may appear in Area and Address segments.

HIS-100
(1978)

6 The quarterly
sample

For purposes of quarterly tabulations of data, separate samples are designated for each quarter of the year. Each quarterly sample is then distributed into 13 weekly samples, of approximately equal size, so that any seasonal factors will not distort the survey results.

The sample designation identifies the calendar year and quarter in which sample units are interviewed. For example, 781 designates the sample beginning in January 1978; 782 designates the sample beginning in April 1978, etc.

D Scope of the survey

Each year, health information is gathered for every civilian person in 40,000 sample households. Adult residents, found at home at the time of your call, provide the information required.

The questionnaire for the survey provides for certain information to be collected on a continuing basis. In addition to this basic information, supplemental inquiries are included from time to time in order to provide information on special topics. Any one supplemental inquiry may be repeated at regular intervals, or may be used only once.

E Information accorded
confidential treatment

All information which would permit identification of the individual is held strictly confidential, seen only by persons engaged in the National Health Survey (including related studies carried out by the Public Health Service) and not disclosed or released to others for any other purpose.

CHAPTER 2

YOUR JOB PERFORMANCE IN HIS

A General

As an interviewer for the Health Interview Survey you will be assigned to work in one of the sample areas (PSU's). Your duties will be much the same on each assignment, although you may also perform various functions in different parts of the sample area.

B Basic field duties

It will be your responsibility to perform field duties of the following types:

- 1 Listing or updating units at time of interview in address and Take All (TA) places in special place segments.
- 2 Prelisting or updating area segments and Non Take All (NTA) places in special place segments.
- 3 Interviewing at units designated for the current sample in various types of segments.

You will interview households mainly by personal interview and occasionally by telephone. Courtesy and discretion at all times are especially important in gaining the confidence and cooperation of the respondents.

C Additional duties

You will also be expected to:

- 1 Be available for day and evening work.
- 2 Read instructional material and complete problem exercises.
- 3 Complete your assignment within a prescribed period of time.
- 4 Make weekly transmittals of completed work to your office.
- 5 Keep an accurate daily record of the work you do, the time you spend, and the miles you travel.

6 Meet the standards of accuracy and efficiency described below.

D Standards of performance for interviewers

The Health Interview Survey is operated on a fixed budget which means that every phase of the survey must be conducted in the most efficient way. Otherwise, it will be impossible to conduct the survey or to continue the employment of the persons assigned to it.

The success of HIS depends on each interviewer getting and recording accurate and complete information. Otherwise, no amount of review or correction can improve the reliability of the results. Equally important, if you do not complete your assignments efficiently in the prescribed time period, the survey cannot be conducted within its time schedule or its budget.

Standards of performance have been established so that each interviewer will know what is required.

1 Production standards

We have determined the amount of time (based on past experience of HIS interviewers) required to complete each assignment accurately at a reasonable working pace. This standard, which includes time for travel, listing, interviewing, and other required activities, will be compared with the amount of time you actually take for the assignment, to see how efficiently you are performing your work.

Always begin on Monday of "interview" week and complete your interviews as soon as possible during that week. Completion of your assignment within the specified time is not only important from a cost standpoint, but is also essential in order to meet production deadlines.

a Planning your travel route

The time and mileage spent in traveling from one segment to the next is one of the major costs of the survey. Hold travel to a minimum by carefully planning which segments to visit on a particular day and the order in which to visit them.

HIS-100
(1978)

b Reduction
of
callbacks

Costs and timing are also affected by the number of callbacks (revisits to an address) required. You may find that your rate of production is relatively high during the first few days of interviewing because somebody is at home at most of the addresses you visit. However, production may fall off if you have scattered callbacks. You can minimize this by planning your initial visits at the most productive time, and by tying in callbacks with remaining initial visits to the same part of the sample area.

Where a household is not at home at your first visit, make a careful inquiry of neighbors, janitors, etc., to find out when would be the best time to call back.

c Efficient
conduct of
interviews

Another time saver is the efficient conduct of interviews. If you are thoroughly familiar with the sequence of items on the HIS-1 questionnaire, and how to fill each one, you can conduct a rapid and efficient interview without sacrificing accuracy. Be prepared to explain the purpose of the survey briefly and clearly, how the information is used, and related subjects. You will be given copies of publications which you can show the respondent to help you in your explanation. You should also save any articles from local newspapers or magazines that report results of Census survey work in association with the National Center for Health Statistics.

2 Quality of
interviewing

No matter how efficiently the survey is conducted, the results may be seriously affected by incomplete, or inaccurately filled, listing and interview forms. In rating interviewers, the quality of their work is given as much weight as their productivity. This manual, and other materials which will be provided, contain all of the instructions needed to list and interview. Learn how to use the manual to look up unfamiliar things. Also, learn how to use the INTERviewer COMMunication to advise your office of special situations or problems.

- a Interviewer's error rate
Each week, your supervisor will give you a report of errors detected in the course of reviewing your work. The report will specify steps you should take to avoid similar errors in the future. Serious and frequent errors can be eliminated if you are thoroughly familiar with the instructions, and if you ask the questions on the questionnaire in a uniform and consistent fashion.

- b Field evaluation of interviewer's work
Aside from office review, there will be field observation of each interviewer's listing and interviewing work. From time to time you will be observed by your supervisor, as you actually perform these duties. Your office will also reinterview some of your households to be sure that you obtain accurate and complete information.

- 3 Performance rating
Each quarter, your supervisor will tell you how your performance in the preceding quarter compared with the production and mileage allowances, and how you may improve your performance. The administrative handbook for interviewers gives standards of performance, and tells how to accurately complete payroll and other administrative forms.

HIS-100
(1978)

PART D

HOW TO INTERVIEW HIS

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

This chapter contains a general description of the questionnaire and the related survey materials, the interviewing sequence, and general instructions for using the questionnaire.

A. Description of Materials

1 HIS-1 Questionnaire

- a Purpose - The HIS-1 is the basic document used in the Health Interview Survey. In it you will record pertinent information reported during the interview. The tabulated responses from the questionnaires for all of the sample households become the basis for statistical reports about the health of the Nation.
- b Contents and Layout - The questionnaire contains several types of pages. Each type covers a certain kind of information.
 - 1) Household Page - The Household page is the front cover of the questionnaire. This page contains identification information and questions about the residence of the sample household.
 - 2) Probe Pages - Pages 2-17 are called "Probe" pages because they contain questions which are designed to "pick up" disability, activity limitations, illness conditions, doctor visits, hospitalizations, etc.

Pages 2 and 3 of the questionnaire contain probe questions about restricted activity and the conditions causing the restriction. Two-week accidents and injuries and dental visit questions are on pages 4 and 5. Pages 6 and 7 contain questions about doctor visits. Pages 8 and 9 contain questions about activity limitations. Pages 10 and 11 contain questions about hospitalizations. Pages 12-15 contain lists of certain selected conditions. Pages 16 and 17 contain a general health question and questions about bed days during the past 12 months, comparative health status and a respondent check item.

- 3) Condition Page - There are six Condition pages (18-29). These pages consist of questions designed to gather detailed information about illnesses and injuries reported in response to the probe questions.
- 4) Doctor Visits Page - This page (30 and 31) consists of questions about visits or calls to a doctor within the past two weeks.
- 5) Hospital Page - This page (32 and 33) consists of questions about hospitalizations within the past 12 or 13 months.

- 6) Health Insurance Page - This page (34 and 35) consists of questions concerning Medicare and health insurance coverage.
- 7) Usual Source of Care page - This page (36 and 37) contains questions on source and location of medical care.
- 8) Blood Donor Page - This page (38 and 39) contains questions about blood donation history.
- 9) Person Pages - Pages 40-47 obtain personal information about each household member. Pages 40 and 41 contain questions about veteran status. Pages 42 and 43 obtain information about supplementary income and medical care received through certain federal programs. Pages 44 and 45 contain questions on height and weight, education, racial background and national origin. Pages 46 and 47 obtain information on work status and income.
- 10) Table X, Item E - This page (48) consists of questions to determine if additional living quarters at this address are part of the sample unit or an EXTRA unit.

c Format.

- 1) The Probe pages, the Health Insurance, Usual Source of Care, Blood Donor and the Person pages are arranged in seven-column format. Ask the respondent the questions on the left side of the page; enter the answers in the six numbered columns which appear to the right of the questions-- a separate column for each person. Record the answers for each person in his column on each of these pages.
- 2) Each Condition page consists of two facing pages containing questions about a single condition.
- 3) The Two-Week Doctor Visits, and Hospital pages are also arranged in columnar format. Ask the questions on the left side of the page; answer space is provided in the four columns to the right of the questions on each page.

2 Information Card Booklet


The flashcard booklet is made up of a group of cards to be used in completing the interview. Some of the cards are shown to the respondent while others are used only by you, the interviewer. Have a second flashcard booklet for the respondent's use so that the necessity of passing the booklet back and forth can be reduced to a minimum.

A2

- a The inside of the front cover, Card HM, contains a summary table for determining who to include as a household member.
- b Use Card A, the Age Verification Chart, in probe question 3 to determine the person's age.
- c Show Card 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 (question 32) to the respondent when asking the condition list in Spanish speaking households.
- d Card C is a list of illness conditions for which questions 3a-e on the Condition page need not be asked.
- e Use Cards E1-E3 as guides when editing the Condition and Hospital Pages.
- f Show Card N to the respondent when asking the health insurance question (7). There is a Spanish and an English version.
- g Show card P to the respondent when asking the usual source of care question (7). There are English and Spanish versions.
- h Show Card B to the respondent when asking the blood donation question (1). There are English and Spanish versions.
- i Show Cards R and O to the respondent when asking the race and origin questions (11 and 12). There are English and Spanish versions.
- j Card I is a list of income groups shown to the respondent when asking the income questions (15 and 17). There is a Spanish and an English version.
- k There are yearly calendars for 1977 and 1978 and a card giving the dates of various holidays in 1977 and 1978.
- l There is a card containing a list of items to fill for extra questionnaires.
- m There is a card containing the listing statement and some verification examples.
- n Show the Medicare and Medicaid cards to the respondent when asking those questions.
- o On the outside back cover is a brief explanation of the survey.
- p There is also a brief explanation to use when leaving the Family Medical Expense Supplement with the respondent. (781 only)

A

3 Calendar Card


UNITED STATES
HEALTH INTERVIEW SURVEY
1977-1978

	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
DECEMBER 1977					1	2	3
	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
	25	26	27	28	29	30	31
JANUARY 1978	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
	15	16	17	18	19	20	21
	22	23	24	25	26	27	28
	29	30	31				

○ HOLIDAYS

Red line (the past two weeks) →

Week 01 - 781 (interview week) →

A separate calendar card is furnished with each week's assignment. Hand the card to the respondent and refer to it at different times throughout the interview to remind the respondent of a particular two-week period. Before starting each interviewing assignment, prepare two or three calendar cards by outlining the dates of the two-week reference period in red. The beginning and ending dates should correspond with the two-week dates stamped in questionnaire item C2 by your Regional Office.

Use a ruler or straight edge to mark off the two-week period on the calendar card. Use a sharp red pencil or a pen with red ink.

B General Interviewing Instructions

1 Symbols, Type Face, and Use of Pronouns

In order to become familiar with the questionnaire, you must learn the meaning of the different kinds of symbols and type face used on the questionnaire.

a Symbols Used - The following symbols are used throughout the questionnaire:

- 1) Use of Three Dots - Where three dots (...) appear, insert the name of the illness, accident, or injury which you are talking about. This aids the respondent in answering the questions especially when several illnesses have been reported.

4. During the past 2 weeks, did his ... cause him to cut down on the things he usually does?

- 2) Use of Two Dashes - Where two dashes (--) appear, insert the name of the person, relationship, the number, or whatever is appropriate for the question.

6. During those 2 weeks, how many days did illness or injury keep -- from school?

- 3) Use of One Dash - Where a single dash (-) appears, pause and then continue with the remainder of the question.

3a. What did the doctor say it was? - Did he give it a medical name?

- 4) Wording in Parentheses - These are either alternative or additional wordings of a question and are used, as appropriate, for a particular situation.

18a. During the past 12 months, (that is since (date) a year ago), about how many times did -- see or talk to a medical doctor? (Do not count doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.) (Include the -- visits you already told me about.)

- 5) Words in Brackets - These vertically aligned words or phrases within brackets are alternatives from which one or more is to be selected.

10a.	What condition caused -- to	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>stay in bed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>miss work</td> </tr> <tr> <td>miss school</td> </tr> <tr> <td>cut down</td> </tr> </table>	stay in bed	miss work	miss school	cut down	during the past 2 weeks?
stay in bed							
miss work							
miss school							
cut down							

- 6) Skip Instructions - Numbers or letters in parentheses following answers or check boxes indicate the question to go to next. If the question is not applicable, go to the next question, person, or whatever is appropriate. If no skip instruction is given, continue with the next question. (NP) means "next person;" (NC) means "next condition."

10a.	<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)
	Elem: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
	High: 9 10 11 12
	College: 1 2 3 4 5 6+

b.	1 Y 2 N

11a.	<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
	1 Y (14) 2 N

b.	1 Y 2 N

c.	1 Y 2 N (14)

d.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Looking 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Born
	2 <input type="checkbox"/> Layoff

A4	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident or injury	<input type="checkbox"/> Other (NC)
-----------	---	-------------------------------------

- b) Print Type Used - The questions you ask of the respondent appear in heavy black type. Instructions to you appear in italics or light face type. Stress words or phrases in capital letters when asking the questions.

27a.	Is -- limited in ANY WAY because of a disability or health?

b.	In what way is he limited? Record limitation, not condition.

c) Use of Pronouns

- 1) Address the respondent by the proper title, e.g., Mr., Mrs., Miss, etc., unless specifically requested by the respondent to use his first name. When asking about other adult members of the family, substitute appropriate pronouns, such as "he" or "she," or use the relationship of the person involved.

B1

- 2) If you are interviewing a one or two person household, substitute "you" or "you and your husband" for the phrase "anyone in the family."
- 3) For children under 17, change the question(s) to "During the past 2 weeks how many times did anyone (you) see a medical doctor about John?" or "When did anyone (you) first notice Mark's ear infection?"

2 How to Make Entries

a Make written entries wherever a write-in space is provided for a written entry, for example, effects of allergy.

For allergy or stroke, ask:
 d. How does the allergy (stroke) effect him?

runny nose

b Wherever a "check box" is provided, enter an "X," as appropriate.

H	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Under 17 <input type="checkbox"/> At home <input type="checkbox"/> Not at home
----------	--

c Where "Y" or "N" appears, circle the "Y" for "Yes," or the "N" for "No."

These next questions are about how well -- can see (with glasses/contacts).
 10a. Can -- see well enough to read ordinary newspaper print with
 his { left } eye? 1 2 N
 { right } eye? 1 Y 2

d When reasking a question, you must circle "N" if "Y" is circled.

11a. During the past 2 weeks, did anyone in the family, that is you, your --, etc., have any (other) accidents or injuries? Y N (12)

 b. Who was this? - Mark "Accident or injury" box in person's column.

 c. What was the injury?

 d. Did anyone have any other accidents or injuries during that period? Y N

 If "Accident or injury," ask:
 e. As a result of the accident, did -- see a doctor or did he cut down on the things he usually does?

- e If "Y" is circled or the "Yes" box marked, also circle "N" or mark "No" to show the question is complete even if it is not asked, for example, in a one person household.

(Besides these visits)

15a. During that 2-week period did anyone in the family go to a doctor's office or clinic for shots, X-rays, tests, or examinations? Y N. (16)

b. Who was this? - Mark "Doctor visit" box in person's column.

c. Anyone else? Y (Reask 15b and c)

If "Doctor visit," ask:

d. How many times did -- visit the doctor during that period?

- f Use two digits for month and date entries.

You said that -- was in the hospital (nursing home) during the past year.

2. When did -- enter the hospital (nursing home) (the last time)?

USE YOUR CALENDAR
Make sure the YEAR is correct

Month	Date	Year
01	08	1977

19. Record of calls

Month	Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Completed Mark (X)
06	20	a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	

- g Some questions require a written entry for length of time in months or years. Enter whole numbers as reported, dropping any fractions. If the response is a number of months greater than 12, divide it by 12 and round down to the nearest number of years.

- 1) If the answer is "Eighteen months," enter:

000 Less than 1 month

28a. 1 ___ Mos. 2 1 Yrs.

- 2) If the answer is "Six weeks," enter:

000 Less than 1 month

28a. 1 1 Mos. 2 ___ Yrs.

h Don't Know - In answering questions, the respondent may indicate that he does not know the answer. If, after probing, he still cannot answer the question, the entry in the answer space for that question must indicate that the respondent doesn't know the answer. Either write "DK" (don't know) in the answer space or mark "DK."

3. What is the name and address of this hospital (nursing home)?	Name	Castroville Mem.	
	Street	DK	
	City (or county)	Dallas	State Okla.

2. When did -- last see or talk to a doctor about his ...?

1 <input type="checkbox"/> In interview week (Reask 2)	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 wks. (Item C)	5 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 yrs.
2 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos.	2 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos.	6 <input type="checkbox"/> 5- yrs.
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos.	3 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos.	7 <input type="checkbox"/> Never
4 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 yr.	4 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 yr.	8 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> DK if Dr. seen
		9 <input type="checkbox"/> DK when Dr. seen

i Interval

1) Boxes are provided for intervals in several places. If the response does not provide enough information to mark the right box, ask additional questions. For example, if the respondent says "Six months ago" in response to question 2 on the Condition page, find out whether it was less than six months or more than six months ago, then mark the appropriate box, that is, "2 wks.-6 mos." or "Over 6-12 mos." It is necessary to probe any time the respondent gives an answer which falls on the borderline, such as "Two weeks ago," "Six months ago," "One year ago." If the answer falls exactly at the breaking point, for example, exactly 6 months ago, mark the lower category, in this case "2 wks.-6 mos."

2. When did -- last see or talk to a doctor about his ...?

1 <input type="checkbox"/> In interview week (Reask 2)	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 wks. (Item C)	5 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 yrs.
2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos.	2 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos.	6 <input type="checkbox"/> 5- yrs.
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos.	3 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos.	7 <input type="checkbox"/> Never
4 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 yr.	4 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 yr.	8 <input type="checkbox"/> DK if Dr. seen
		9 <input type="checkbox"/> DK when Dr. seen

- 2) Sometimes in answer to certain questions requiring a single numerical entry, the respondent may not be able to give an exact number but may answer in terms of a range or interval. You may have to assist him in making an estimate. For example, you might ask, "How many days during a month did your ... usually keep you in bed; how many months was this the pattern?" or the same type of question might be asked in terms of weeks. In such cases, try as tactfully as possible to obtain a specific number, even if it is an estimate. However, do not force the issue to the point where it harms the interview. If the final answer is an interval or range, for example, "From 10 to 12," then record "10-12" in the answer space.

Ask if 17+ years:	
7. How many days did his ... keep him from work during that 2-week period? (For females): not counting work around the house?	10-12 Days (9) 00 -- None (9)

- j) "None" Entries - Mark the "None" box when an answer of "None" is received to one of the questions. If there is no "None" box, enter a dash (—) in the answer space.

This survey is being conducted to collect information on the Nation's health. I will ask about visits to doctors and dentists, illness in the family, and other health related items. (Hand calendar) The next few questions refer to the past 2 weeks, the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar, beginning Monday, _____ (date), and ending this past Sunday, _____ (date).		
5a. During these 2 weeks, did -- stay in bed because of any illness or injury?	5a. 00 N	<input checked="" type="radio"/> (5b) If age: 17-65 } 6-16, 7 } Under 5 } 19
b. During that 2-week period, how many days did -- stay in bed all or most of the day?	b. _____ Days	

6. During these 2 weeks, how many days did illness or injury keep -- from work? (For females): not counting work around the house?	6. _____ WL days (8) 00 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (9)
--	---

- k) Corrections - Do not erase an entry since it is often impossible to distinguish between the erasure and the intended entry. Make corrections of the entries in the questionnaire as follows:

- 1) Line out an incorrect written entry and write the correct entry above it.

For allergy or stroke, ask:
d. How does the allergy (stroke) affect him?
Roller sneezes

HIS-100
(1978)

B2

- 2) If a check box has been marked incorrectly, draw a circle around the incorrect entry, then mark the correct box, or make the correct entry.

9. When did -- first notice his ...?	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Last week	<input type="checkbox"/> 2 weeks-3 months
<input type="checkbox"/> Week before	<input type="checkbox"/> Over 3-12 months
<input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks-DK which	<input type="checkbox"/> More than 12 months ago
(Was it during the past 12 months or before that time?)	
(Was it during the past 3 months or before that time?)	
(Was it during the past 2 weeks or before that time?)	

Ask if 6-16 years:	
8. How many days did his ... keep him from school during that 2-week period?	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 Days <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None

- 3) Line out an incorrect numerical entry and enter the correct number.

5. During that period, how many days did he cut down for as much as a day?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2 Days <input type="checkbox"/> None (9)
--	---

- 4) Line out an incorrectly circled entry and circle the correct answer.

4. During the past 2 weeks, did his ... cause him to cut down on the things he usually does?	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 (9)
--	---

3 More Than One Questionnaire

a The number of questionnaires needed in a household will depend on household composition and on how many conditions, doctor visits, and hospitalizations are reported for that household. Additional questionnaires will be needed for a household if any of the following occurs:

- 1) There are more than six related persons in the household.
- 2) There are household members not related to the head of the household.
- 3) There are more than six conditions or four two-week doctor visits or four hospitalizations.

4) There are more than three health insurance plans.

- b If a second questionnaire is required because of 3) or 4) above, use the pages of the first questionnaire to record the information as long as there is room. Only when all of the pages of a particular type are filled in the first questionnaire is the second questionnaire needed.
- c Complete a separate questionnaire for each unrelated household member or family group, including noninterviewed persons.

4 Shaded Areas (Zipitone)

- a Make no entries in these areas.
- b Ask the questions above these areas for each person before going to the question below the shaded area for the first person.

14. During the past 2 weeks (the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar) how many times did -- see a medical doctor?	14 <input type="checkbox"/> None _____ Number of visits } ND
(Besides these visits)	
15a. During that 2-week period did anyone in the family go to a doctor's office or clinic for shots, X-rays, tests, or examinations?	Y N (16)
b. Who was this? - Mark "Doctor visit" box in person's column.	
	15b } Doctor visit

5 Persons Under 17

Mark the "Under 17" box for persons under 17 years of age regardless of marital status, work status, etc..

H	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Under 17 <input type="checkbox"/> At home <input type="checkbox"/> Not at home
----------	--

6 Events Occurring During Past Two Weeks

- a Do not include any illness, hospitalization or health-related event starting during interview week no matter how serious it might be. If you record something of this kind and afterwards learn that it should not have been recorded, delete or correct the entry, as appropriate, and explain the deletion in a footnote.

HIS-100
(1978)

B6

- b This rule does not apply to household membership or personal characteristics, such as age, marital status or membership in the Armed Forces, all of which apply as of the time of interview.

7 Footnotes and Comments

- a Relevant and precise footnotes or comments are often helpful to the processors in coding various parts of the questionnaire or in solving problems which arise out of inconsistencies or omissions, estimates, etc. When possible, make notes or comments near the answer box containing the entry to which the explanation or comment applies or in the footnote space.
- b When you footnote an explanation or comment, indicate to which entry that explanation or comment applies. Do this by writing the number of the footnote, for example, "1/" both at the source of the footnote and next to the footnote itself.

<p>18a. During the past 12 months, (that is since <u> (date) </u> a year ago), about how many times did -- see or talk to a medical doctor? (Do not count doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.) (Include the -- visits you already told me about.)</p>	<p>18a. 000 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Only when in hospital 000 <input type="checkbox"/> None Number of visits</p>
<p>b. ABOUT how long has it been since -- LAST saw or talked to a medical doctor? Include doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.</p> <p><i>✓ only visit while in hospital post 2 wks.</i></p>	<p>b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-week DV 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks not reported (14 and 17) ✓ 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos. 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos. 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 year 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 years 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 5+ years 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Never</p>

8 How to Record Answers

In the interest of accuracy, record all answers on the questionnaire exactly as they are obtained from the respondent at the time they are reported. It is extremely important that entries are legible and clearly understandable.

C Conducting the Interview

- 1 The materials needed to conduct an interview are: HIS-1 Questionnaire, HIS-501 Information Card Booklet, Segment Folder, Calendar Card, "Thank You" letter, and HIS-1B and 2B Family Medical Expense Supplement (through April 16, 1978).

C

- 2 When you receive your assignment from the Regional Office, complete each interview in the following manner:
- a Step 1 - Check Section 1 of the Segment Folder to determine if you must list (or update) only, list (or update) and interview, or interview only. If listing (or updating) is required, proceed according to the instructions in Part C of this manual for the particular type of segment. If interviewing only is required, check the address of the current sample unit on the listing sheet in the Segment Folder to make sure that this address appears in item 6a of the questionnaire.
 - b Step 2 - When you begin the interview, verify the sample address with the respondent. Ask "YEAR BUILT" if required, and questions 8 and 9 as applicable. Complete Table X, if required.
 - c Step 3 - Complete probe questions 1-item H. Hand the Calendar Card to the respondent, ask questions 5-34 and complete item R.
 - d Step 4 - Complete a separate Condition page for each condition listed in item C2.
 - e Step 5 - Complete a column of the Doctor Visits page for each doctor visit indicated in item C1.
 - f Step 6 - Complete a column of the Hospital page for each hospitalization indicated in item C1.
 - g Step 7 - Complete the Health Insurance page using the sample Medicare card with question 1 and Card N with question 7.
 - h Step 8 - Complete the Usual Source of Care page, using Card P with question 7.
 - i Step 9 - Complete the Blood Donor page, using Card B with question 1c.
 - j Step 10 - Complete the Person pages, using the sample Medicaid card with question 7, Card R with question 11, Card O with question 12, and Card I with questions 15 and 17.
 - k Step 11 - Complete the Household page, items 10-19 and review the questionnaire for completeness.
 - l Step 12 - Explain and leave the Family Medical Expenses Supplement (through April 16, 1978).
 - m Thank the respondent and leave the "Thank You" letter.

CHAPTER 2. HOUSEHOLD PAGE

Chapter 2 describes how and when to fill each item on the Household page.

①

Item 1, Book of Books

①

1. Book _____ of _____ books

If you use only one questionnaire for a household, fill this item to read, "Book 1 of 1 books." If you use two questionnaires, fill item 1 on the first questionnaire to read, "Book 1 of 2 books" and the second, "Book 2 of 2 books. Make corresponding entries when three or more questionnaires are used. Complete the entries in item 1 after the interview.

② — ⑤

Items 2 through 5, Identification

② — ⑤

2. R.O. number	3. Sample	4. Segment type	5. Control number		
		<input type="checkbox"/> Area <input type="checkbox"/> Permit <input type="checkbox"/> Address <input type="checkbox"/> Cen-Sup <input type="checkbox"/> Special place	PSU	Segment	Serial

- 1 These items are filled in advance by the office. They identify the sample units.
- 2 EXTRA Units - Transcribe from the questionnaire for the original sample unit, items 2-5, except for serial number. Leave the space for serial number blank, as this is assigned later by the office.
- 3 Two or More Questionnaires for One Household - For second and additional questionnaires prepared for the household, transcribe items 2-5, including serial number, from the first questionnaire for the household.

6

Item 6, Address

6

6a. What is your exact address? (Include House No., Apt. No., or other identification and ZIP code)			Listing Sheet
-----			Sheet No. -----
City	State	ZIP code	Line No. -----
6b. Is this your mailing address? <input type="checkbox"/> Same as 6a			
Mark box or specify if different. Include ZIP code.			

City	State	ZIP code	
6c. Special place name	Sample unit number	Type code	

- 1 After your introduction, verify the address in 6a before beginning the interview by asking "What is your exact address?"
 - a Make corrections and additions, including the ZIP code, as necessary. Cross out, DO NOT ERASE, incorrect entries and write the correct entry above it. Any address correction made in 6a must also be made on the listing sheets as instructed in Part C.

NOTE: In area segments, you will often find a descriptive address entered in 6a, such as "White house with green shutters, etc. ..." DO NOT cross out this entry. In these cases, the respondent will most likely respond to question 6a by giving you the mailing address, such as a box number, route number, or a house number and street name, which may not have been visible at the time of listing. Enter the information in item 6b, and then ask the item 6b question.
 - b For EXTRA units, fill item 6a with an accurate unit description so that the EXTRA unit can easily be distinguished from the original unit.
- 2 After the respondent answers 6a, ask item 6b. "Is this your mailing address?"
 - a If the address in 6a is identical to the mailing address, mark the box "Same as 6a" in 6b. If there are any differences, enter the complete mailing address in item 6b, if you have not already done so, as described in the NOTE above. ALWAYS include the ZIP code in 6b.
 - b The mailing address should be as complete as possible, for example, an adequate urban mailing address includes house number (and apartment number, if any), street, name of city supplying postal service, and ZIP code. In rural areas, an adequate mailing address includes route no. (box no., if any), name of Post Office, and ZIP code. General delivery or box no. and P.O. city and ZIP code are also acceptable mailing addresses.

HIS-100
(1978)

⑥ Address (Continued)

⑥

- 3 Item 6c is filled by the office for units in special places. If at time of interview you find a regular unit is actually a unit in a special place, fill the space labeled "Special place name."
 - a See Part C, Topic ③7 for information on special place procedures. A complete list and description of the types of special places is given in Part C, Table A.
 - b For EXTRA units, transcribe the special place name from item 6c on the HIS-1 for the original sample unit to item 6c on the new HIS-1 for the EXTRA unit.

7

Item 7, Year Built

7

7. YEAR BUILT <input type="checkbox"/> Ask \rightarrow	<input type="checkbox"/> Do NOT Ask
When was this structure originally built?	
<input type="checkbox"/> Before 4-1-70 (Continue interview)	<input type="checkbox"/> After 4-1-70 (Go to 9c, complete if required and end interview)

- 1 The HIS sample is kept up to date by supplementing the sample of addresses obtained from the 1970 Census with a sample of building permits issued since April 1, 1970. The selected permit addresses are included in the survey as permit segment addresses. In area segments that are located in permit-issuing areas, each newly constructed unit must be deleted from the sample. Otherwise, it could have a chance to come into sample more than once. See Part C, Topic 52 for more information about YEAR BUILT.
- 2 Item 7 is marked by the office. If the ASK box is marked, ask item 7 for both vacant and occupied units. If the unit is a noninterview, try to get the information from a knowledgeable person, such as an apartment manager or long-term resident of the neighborhood. All sample units in a multi-unit structure are considered built at the same time.

YEAR BUILT refers to the date the original structure was completed, not the time of later remodeling, additions, or conversions. Consider construction as completed when all the exterior windows and doors have been installed and the final usable floors are finished so that the unit is ready for occupancy.

a If the structure containing the sample unit was built before 4-1-70:

- 1) Mark the Before 4-1-70 box.
- 2) Continue the interview.

b If the structure containing the sample unit was built after 4-1-70:

- 1) Mark the After 4-1-70 box.
- 2) Ask item 9c, if required.
- 3) End the interview.
- 4) Mark the Type C noninterview reason, "Built after April 1, 1970," in item 18.

HIS-100
(1978)

⑦ Year Built (Continued) ⑦

3 EXTRA Units

- a Determine YEAR BUILT for EXTRA units in area segments in permit areas. If the EXTRA unit is in the same structure as the original sample unit, the YEAR BUILT is the same for both units.
- b Do not determine YEAR BUILT for EXTRA units in permit segments, special place segments, cen-sup, or area segments in nonpermit areas.
- c Determine YEAR BUILT for EXTRA units in address segments only if the EXTRA is in a different structure than the original unit, and the structure appears to have been built since April 1, 1970.

4 Exceptions - See Section F in Topic ⑤② in Part C.

⑧ Item 8, Type of Living Quarters ⑧

8. Type of living quarters → Housing unit OTHER unit

Mark the box for Housing unit or OTHER unit according to the definitions given in Part C, Topics ①⑦ and ③① for Type A and Type B noninterviews as well as for interviewed units. Leave item 8 blank for Type C noninterviews.

Question 9, Coverage

9. Area segments ONLY		
<input type="checkbox"/> a. Are there any occupied or vacant living quarters besides your own in this building?	Y (fill Table X)	N
<input type="checkbox"/> b. Are there any occupied or vacant living quarters besides your own on this floor?	Y (fill Table X)	N
<input type="checkbox"/> c. Is there any other building on this property for people to live in - either occupied or vacant?	Y (fill Table X)	N
<input type="checkbox"/> d. None		
GO TO PROBE PAGE 2		

- 1 Questions 9a-c are coverage questions which are asked only in area segments. They are intended to discover EXTRA units.
 - 2 Your office will indicate which of questions 9a-c you are to ask in area segments by marking the appropriate box(es) in question 9.
 - 3 If the "None" box is marked in 9d, omit question 9 entirely and go directly to question 1 on Probe page 2.
 - 4 If you find that a sample unit is a Type A or B noninterview, ask 9a, b, or c of a janitor, apartment manager, neighbor, etc. If you find that a sample unit is a Type C noninterview, ask question 9c (if it is marked) of a knowledgeable person in the area. Modify the question to refer to the noninterview unit. For example, in asking 9a of a neighbor, you should say, "Are there living quarters for more than one group of people in that vacant house next door?"
 - 5 If the answer to question 9a, 9b, or 9c is "No," go to question 1 on Probe page 2.
 - 6 If the answer to question 9a, 9b, or 9c is "Yes," fill Table X on the back of the questionnaire and then go to question 1 on Probe page 2. See Part D, Chapter 11, and Part C, Topic (43) for the procedure to follow.
- NOTE: If a unit was merged with a sample unit and later became unmerged, consider it as unlisted and treat it as an EXTRA to the sample unit.
- 7 EXTRA Units - Do not ask coverage questions for EXTRA units. For these units make no entries in question 9.
 - 8 Go to question 1 on page 2 after completing question 8, or question 9, if required. Complete the remaining questions on the Household page after the interview.

⑩ — ⑫ **Item 10, Questions 11 and 12, Tenure and Land Use** ⑩ — ⑫

10. Land use	2 <input type="checkbox"/> RURAL	1 <input type="checkbox"/> URBAN (13)	
	-- Regular units and Special Place units coded 85-88 in 6c. go to 11.		
	-- Special Place units not coded 85-88 in 6c. go to 13.		
11. Do you own or rent this place?	<input type="checkbox"/> Own	<input type="checkbox"/> Rent	<input type="checkbox"/> Rent for free
12a. Does this place you (own/rent/rent for free) have 10 acres or more?	1 Y (12b)	2 N (12c)	
b. During the past 12 months did sales of crops, livestock, and other farm products from this place amount to \$50 or more?	1 Y (13)	2 N (13)	
c. During the past 12 months did sales of crops, livestock, and other farm products from this place amount to \$250 or more?	1 Y	2 N	

1 Item 10 is marked by the office. For EXTRA units, mark the same box in item 10 that is marked for the original unit.

- a If the office has marked RURAL and the sample unit is either a regular unit or a special place unit coded 85-88 in item 6c, go to question 11.
- b If the office has marked RURAL and the sample unit is a special place unit not coded 85-88 in 6c, skip questions 11 and 12, and go to question 13. The office will automatically circle "N" in question 12c for these cases.
- c If the office has marked URBAN, skip questions 11 and 12, and go to question 13.

2 Question 11, (Tenure) Own, Rent, or Rent for Free

- a Own - Mark "Own" if the owner or co-owner is living at the sample unit, even though he is not the head of the household or he is absent, such as a family member in the Armed Forces or temporarily working away from home.
 - 1) Mark the "own" box even if the place is mortgaged or not fully paid for.
 - 2) A cooperative apartment is owned only if the owner lives in it.
 - 3) In the case of a trailer which is owned by the occupant but which is parked on rented ground, the land is considered to be the unit for the land usage question. Mark the box for "Rent" in such a case.
- b Rent - Mark "Rent" if any money rent is paid or contracted for. The rent may be paid by persons not living in the unit, for example, a welfare agency.

- c Rent for Free - Mark "Rent for free" for places occupied rent free by persons in exchange for services rendered, such as caretaker, a farm worker, or janitor who receives the use of a house or apartment as part of his wages. Report a tenant farmer who does not pay money rent as occupying the unit "Rent for free."

3 Question 12, Sale of Farm Products from This Place

- a Question 12a - Ask question 12a by selecting the phrase in parentheses that matches the box marked in question 11.

- 1) The question "Does this place you (own/rent/rent for free) have 10 acres or more?" refers to the amount of land included in the PLACE which contains the sample unit.

In some cases the PLACE may be one sample unit consisting of a house and lot. In other cases it may consist of a whole tract of land or a combination of two or three pieces of land on which the sample unit is located.

If there is any question, consider as PLACE one or more tracts of land which the respondent considers to be the same property, farm (or ranch), or estate. These tracts may be adjoining or they may be separated by a road or creek or other pieces of land.

Explain the meaning of PLACE to the respondent if there seems to be some question.

- 2) More Than One Unit on Same Place - If there is more than one sample unit on the same place (as defined above), the answer for each unit must be the same. For example, an owner lives in one sample unit on a place of 150 acres; his hired hand lives rent free in a separate sample unit on the same place. The answer to question 12a would be "Y" (Yes) for each unit. Remember again, however, that if there is a cash renter on this property, we are referring only to the land which he rents.
- 3) If Place is Definitely in Built-Up Area - There may be certain areas coded RURAL which have been built up into apartment areas, suburban housing developments, and the like. In such cases where the place is obviously a private home on a lot or an apartment, circle "N" without asking these questions.

If the sample unit is in a rural (not built-up) area, ask the question, even if the unit appears to be just a house and lot.

⑩—⑫ Tenure and Land Use (Continued)

⑩—⑫

- b Question 12b, Sale of Produce (\$50 or More) - It is not necessary to find out the precise amount, so long as the answer can be classified as \$50 or more, "Y," or less than \$50, "N." Note that the question refers to gross sales during the past 12 months. If questions arise on the meaning of sales from this place, use the following as a guide:
- 1) Sales from This Place - By sales of crops, livestock and other farm products is meant the gross amount received for the sale of crops, vegetables, fruits, nuts, livestock and livestock products (milk, wool, etc.), poultry and eggs, nursery and forest products produced on this place.
 - 2) Place - The place is the same as that referred to in question 12a.
 - 3) More Than One Unit - If there is more than one sample unit on a place (remembering how place is defined differently for owners and renters), the answer for each unit must be the same. For instance, the owner lives in one unit on a place of 15 acres. His total sales amounted to \$780. His hired hand lives rent free in a separate unit on the place. Each of the two units would have "Y" in question 12a and "Y" in question 12b.
 - 4) Special Situation - If the respondent has recently moved to the place and he has not sold any farm products, explain that this question refers to sales made from this place during the past 12 months, either by him or by someone else. If he is unable or unwilling to make an estimate, enter "DK" (don't know).
- c Question 12c, Sale of Produce (\$250 or More) - In completing question 12c, follow the same instructions as were given for question 12b for sales, definition of place, more than one unit and the special situation. The only difference is that question 12c refers to sales of \$250 or more. The higher amount of sales from a place of less than 10 acres is required for it to be classified as a farm. If the place is obviously a private home on a lot or an apartment, circle "N" in question 12c without asking the question.

13

Question 13, Number of Rooms

13

13. How many rooms are in this ---? Rooms
Count the kitchen but not the bathroom.

- 1 Use an applicable term, such as trailer, house, your living quarters, etc., when asking the question. If there are several housing units in a structure, make sure that the rooms you are counting are only for the housing unit you are interviewing.
- 2 Count only whole rooms, such as living rooms, dining rooms, kitchen, finished basement or attic rooms, recreation rooms, permanently enclosed sunporches, bedrooms, or other rooms suitable or used for living purposes. Count as a separate room a dinette, kitchenette, or "half-room" which is partitioned off from floor to ceiling; but count as only one room a kitchenette and dinette separated only by shelves or cabinets. Rooms equipped with movable partitions from floor to ceiling are separate rooms.
- 3 Do not count bathrooms, strip or pullman kitchens, halls or foyers, alcoves, pantries, laundries, closets or storage space, unused basement or attic rooms not suitable for living quarters, or porches, unless they have been permanently enclosed and are suitable for year-round use.

14

Question 14, Number of Bedrooms

14

14. How many bedrooms are in this ---? Bedrooms
If "None" describe in footnotes.

- 1 Enter in question 14 the number of rooms in the unit which are mainly used as bedrooms. A bedroom is a room intended primarily to be slept in. In some houses, the upper floor can be made into one or more bedrooms; consider such quarters as bedrooms only if they are finished off. Do not count as a bedroom a combination bedroom-living room or a den which is intended primarily for purposes other than sleeping.
- 2 For purposes of filling questions 13 and 14, one room units are always considered as having one room (question 13) and no bedrooms (question 14). In this case enter a dash in question 14. Describe the situation in the footnote space, for example, "one room apartment."

15

Question 15, Telephone Number

15

15. What is the telephone number here? 2 <input type="checkbox"/> None	Area code/Number
---	------------------

Ask question 15 and enter the telephone number including the area code in the space provided. If the household has a telephone but the number is not obtained, enter the reason. Mark the "None" box only for those cases where there is no telephone in the household. If the respondent asks why you want the number, explain that the number will save the expense and time of a personal callback if you find that some needed information is missing.

Items 16 and 17

16 — 17

Interview Observed, Interviewer's Name and Code

16 — 17

16. Was this interview observed? 1 Y 2 N
--

17. Interviewer's name	Code
------------------------	------

- 1 Item 16, Observed Households - Fill item 16 for all households.
- 2 Item 17, Name and Code of Interviewer - Sign your name in the space provided on all questionnaires after you have completed the entire interview for a household or are turning in the questionnaire as a final noninterview. Also, enter the code which has been assigned to you by your office.

Item 18, Noninterviews

18. Noninterview Reason

TYPE A

1 Refused - Describe in a footnote } Fill items 1-5a
 2 No one at home - repeated calls } 7, 8, 10, 11, 12
 3 Temporarily absent - Footnote } as applicable,
 4 Other (Specify) } 15-19

TYPE B

1 Vacant - nonseasonal }
 2 Vacant - seasonal } Fill items 1-6a,
 3 Usual residence elsewhere } 7-11, 12-15 as
 4 Armed Forces } applicable, 16-19
 5 Other (Specify) }

TYPE C

1 Unused line of listing sheet }
 2 Demolished } Fill items 1-6a,
 3 Merged } Go if no unit,
 4 Outside segment } 9c if no unit
 5 Built after April 1, 1970 } 16-19, 20
 6 Other (Specify) } Inter-Comm.

- 1 Noninterviews are classified into three general groups. See Chapter 13 for an explanation of Type A reasons; and Part C, Topic 28 for an explanation of Type B and C reasons.
- 2 Item 18 is used to report any instance in which you are unable to obtain an interview at a unit or for part of a unit. For each noninterview, you must mark the appropriate reason. If you are unable to interview an unrelated person or group living in the household, be sure to enter the reason for noninterview in item 18 on the separate questionnaire.
- 3 If an interview has been obtained for one or more related members of a family unit but not for all eligible members, consider it a completed interview. Enter the person number of the noninterviewed person in the footnote space on the front of the questionnaire and give the noninterview reason, in full, for each such person. Do not make any entry in item 18.

Item 19, Record of Calls

19. Record of calls				
Month	Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Completed Mark (X)
1		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
2		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
3		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
4		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
5		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
6		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	

- 1 Record all visits made to a household to complete the initial interview including visits made when you found no one home. An "initial interview" is one in which the questions on the basic questionnaire have been completed. Count as "visits," only actual attempts to contact the household, such as ringing the doorbell or knocking on the door. Do not include telephone calls for appointments or additional calls to complete questions for persons not at home at the time of the initial interview or for questions which were overlooked.
 - a Enter the date and time of each visit on the line for the particular visit you are making. That is, enter the date and time of the first call on the first line, for the second call on the second line, etc.
 - b For the date, use two digits for month and date entries. Circle a.m. or p.m. for the time, as appropriate. For example, 01/19, 9:20 a.m. or 01/20, 7:00 p.m., etc. The beginning time represents the time you knock on the door.
 - c After you have completed the initial interview, enter the ending time in the space provided. The interval between the beginning and ending times gives the actual time in the household, including any in-household waiting time. Do not "round" the beginning and ending times to the nearest five minutes but use exact times (to the minute). Enter an "X" in the "Comp." (completed) column, indicating that the interview was completed even if there are items requiring callbacks outstanding. Do this before you leave the household.

19 Record of Calls (Continued)

19

- d A completed interview is one in which you have asked all questions on health and personal characteristics for most related members of a household. If a respondent has refused to answer a few of the questions, such as that on income, but has provided the rest of the information, consider the interview completed.
- 2 Complete item 19 for each separate family unit. Enter the date and time of each call made and the beginning and ending time of interview for unrelated person(s) on separate questionnaire(s). Enter this information on the separate questionnaire even though you may not have to return to the household at a different time to interview these persons.
- a If an interview is obtained for a family unit, but not for an unrelated person, mark the completed column on the family's questionnaire. Leave this column blank on the questionnaire prepared for the unrelated person.
- b For unrelated household members, mark "X" in item 19, to indicate a completed interview, on each questionnaire that was completed for each unrelated person or group that was interviewed.
- 3 For noninterviewed households, enter only the dates and times when calls were made. Leave the "Ending time" blank.
- 4 Illustration of How to Fill Item 19 - On this page and the following page are illustrations of how to fill item 19. In example 1, no one was at home on the first trip to the household. The housewife and 20-year-old son were interviewed for themselves and for other related household members on the second trip. A roomer could not be interviewed until the third trip.

Example 1

These entries were recorded on the first questionnaire for the related household members.

19. Record of calls				
Month	Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Completed Mark (X)
	01 17	10:30 a.m.	a.m. p.m.	
	01 18	7:45 a.m.	8:30 p.m.	X
		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	
		a.m. p.m.	a.m. p.m.	

19 Record of Calls (Continued)

These dates and times were recorded on the second questionnaire that was filled for the roomer.

19. Record of calls				
Month	Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Completed Mark (X)
	01-18	5:30 a.m.	a.m.	
	01-19	8:10 a.m.	8:30 a.m.	X
		a.m.	a.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	

In example 2, three unrelated persons share an apartment. Column 1 was interviewed on the first visit. Column 2 was out of town for three weeks and column 3 could not be interviewed until the next evening. These entries were recorded on three separate questionnaires.

Example 2

Column (1)

19. Record of calls				
Month	Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Completed Mark (X)
	01-24	6:30 a.m.	7:00 a.m.	X
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	

Column (3)

19. Record of calls				
Month	Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Completed Mark (X)
	01-24	7:10 a.m.	a.m.	
	01-25	7:12 a.m.	7:35 a.m.	X
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	

Column (2)

19. Record of calls				
Month	Date	Beginning time	Ending time	Completed Mark (X)
	01-24	7:10 a.m.	a.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	
		a.m.	a.m.	
		p.m.	p.m.	

18. Noninterview reason	
TYPE A	
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Refusal - Describe in a footnote	} Fill items 1-6a, 7, 8, 10, 12a-c as applicable, 16-19
2 <input type="checkbox"/> No one at home - repeated calls	
3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Temporarily absent - Footnote	
4 <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify) _____	
TYPE B	
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Vacant - nonsessional	} Fill items 1-6a, 7-10, 12a-c as applicable, 16-19
2 <input type="checkbox"/> Vacant - seasonal	
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Usual residence elsewhere	
4 <input type="checkbox"/> Armed Forces	
5 <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify) _____	
TYPE C	
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Unused line of listing sheet	} Fill items 1-6a, 6c if required, 9c if marked, 16-19. Send Inter-Comm.
2 <input type="checkbox"/> Demolished	
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Merged	
4 <input type="checkbox"/> Outside segment	
5 <input type="checkbox"/> Built after April 1, 1970	
6 <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Specify) _____	

OUT of town for 3 wks.
OK where

CHAPTER 3. PROBE PAGES

Chapter 3 discusses each question on Probe pages 2-17, how to fill it, and the necessary information about it.

A Eligible Respondent for Questions 1 and 2

Ask questions 1 and 2 (name and relationship of all household members) of any "responsible" adult member of the household whether or not he is related to the head of the household. "Responsible" means being mentally competent and physically able to think clearly about the questions being asked. "Adult" means a person 19 years old or older or any person who has been married. "Related" means related by blood, marriage, or adoption.

B Eligible Respondent for Remaining Part of Questionnaire

The "eligible" respondent may answer the remaining questions on the basic questionnaire for all related persons, both adults and children under 19 years of age.

- 1 17 or 18 Year Olds - Single persons 17 or 18 years old may not respond for other family members but may respond for themselves. The reason for this restriction is that, while 17 and 18-year-old persons should know about themselves, they are unlikely to have sufficient knowledge about the rest of the family to be able to furnish accurate information. Accept 17 or 18-year-old persons as self-respondents under the following circumstances:
 - a If there is no related person in the household who is 19 years old or over; for example, if the household consists of two unrelated 17 or 18-year-old boys living in a school dormitory room, each may respond for himself.
 - b If they are present during the interview with an older related respondent, 17 or 18-year-old persons may respond entirely or partly for themselves.

c Exception to Adult Respondent Rule

- 1) If an unmarried couple is living together as husband and wife (determined by the relationship reported in question 2), regardless of age, interview them together on a single questionnaire. Each can respond for each other and for any of their children.
 - 2) An unmarried person living with one or more of their children can respond for themselves and their children regardless of the person's age, even if living with their parents. However, if the person is under 19, they cannot respond for other household members.
- 2 Children - Information about a child is normally obtained from one of the parents or other related adult in the household. If an unrelated person is usually responsible for the child's care, that person may respond for the child.
- a When interviewing in a prep or boarding school where the occupants are under 17, arrange for a responsible, knowledgeable person to be present during the interview. The child may or may not respond for himself but in any case footnote the situation. For example, "Head master responded," or "Counselor present."
 - b If the respondent has a foster child or ward living in his home, he should answer the questions about the child. Do not enter these children on a separate questionnaire, but treat them as related household members.
- 3 Adults Not Related - Adults not related to the head of the household (partners, roomers, or domestics) are to answer all questions after question 2, for themselves. If, however, such persons have related family members in the household, any responsible adult member of that family may answer the questions for that family group. If no eligible respondent for the unrelated person is at home at the time of the original interview, a return call must be made to interview them.

C Exception to Eligible Respondent Rule

- 1 You may interview someone who is responsible for the care of a person who is not competent to answer the questions for himself if there are no related members of the household who can answer for that person. The person who provides the care may or may not be a member of the household. For this type of case, explain the circumstances, for example, person is mentally incompetent and unable to respond for self, respondent takes care of her during the day.
- 2 A member of the Armed Forces who lives at home with his family may be interviewed for his family, but no health information is obtained for him because the survey only covers the civilian population.

HIS-100
(1978)

D Return Call May Be Necessary

In some instances, it may be necessary to make return visits to the household in order to interview an "eligible respondent" as defined in paragraph B above. For example, if a respondent does not appear to be "responsible" because of extreme age, illness, etc., stop the interview and arrange to make a return call to interview an eligible respondent. If an otherwise eligible respondent can answer questions for himself, but does not know enough about other related adults in the household, finish the interview for him but arrange to call back for the other household members.

①

Question 1, Household Membership

①

<p>1a. What is the name of the head of this household? - Enter name in first column.</p> <p>b. What are the names of all other persons who live here? - List all persons who live here.</p> <p>c. I have listed (Read names.) Is there anyone else staying here now, such as friends, relatives, or roomers?</p> <p>d. Have I missed anyone who USUALLY lives here but is now away from home?</p> <p>e. Do any of the people in this household have a home anywhere else?</p> <p>f. Are any of the persons in this household now on full-time active duty with the Armed Forces of the United States? Y Col(s) _____ (Delete) z N</p>	<p>Yes* No</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>*Apply household membership rules.</p>	<p>1a. First name ①</p> <p>-----</p> <p>Last name</p>
---	--	---

1. Question 1a - Ask question 1a on page 2 and record the name in column 1.

Enter the first name in the space provided at the top and enter the last name in the space below that. Apply the following definitions:

a. Household - The entire group of persons who live in one housing unit or one OTHER unit. It may be several persons living together or one person living alone. It includes the household head and any relatives living in the unit. The household may also include roomers, servants, or other persons not related to the head.

b. Head of Household - The person who is regarded as the head by the members of the household. It may be the chief breadwinner of the family, the parent of the chief earner, the only adult member of the household, or a member of the Armed Forces living at home about whom we want no health information. In husband-wife households, list the husband first, even if the wife is considered the head.

2. Question 1b - Continue with question 1b and record the names in the appropriate columns. List all members of the household, including unrelated persons, on one questionnaire (or one set of questionnaires if there are more than six persons in a household).

a. If there are 7-12 members in a household, use a second questionnaire and change the column numbers to "7," "8," etc., as shown below. If there are more than 12 members in the household, use additional questionnaires in a similar manner. Enter the last name of the person you list in the first column on second and successive questionnaires even when it is the same as the name listed on the first questionnaire.

<p>1a. First name ⑦</p> <p>James</p> <p>-----</p> <p>Last name</p> <p>Jones</p>	<p>1a. First name ⑧</p> <p>Kate</p> <p>-----</p> <p>Last name</p> <p>—</p>
---	--

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

- b If the persons reported in response to question 1 represent a "typical family group," such as husband, wife, and unmarried children, a parent and child, two or more unmarried sisters, or some similar clear-cut arrangement, consider all the members as a single household.

If, in answer to questions 1b-1d, the respondent reports a married son and his family or relatives, such as a mother, uncle, or cousin, ask if they all live and eat together as one family.

If they all live and eat together, treat them as a single household and interview the entire group on one questionnaire.

If any of the persons reported in answer to question 1 say they live separately from the others, ask about the access to the quarters they occupy and their kitchen facilities. If the quarters have either direct access or complete kitchen facilities, consider them as separate living quarters. If these separate living quarters have not already been listed, apply the rules for EXTRA units, according to the instructions given in Part D, Chapter 12.

- c Prescribed Order of Listing Household - List them in the following order:

- 1) Head of household.
- 2) Wife of the head.
- 3) Unmarried children of the head, or of the wife, in order of their ages, beginning with the oldest.
- 4) Married sons and daughters (in order of age) and their families listed in this order: Husband, wife, children.
- 5) Other persons related to the head.
- 6) Roomers and other persons not related to the head.
- 7) If, among the persons not related to the head, there are married couples or persons otherwise related among themselves, list them in the order indicated for the families of married children (group 4).

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

d How to Enter Names - Enter the names as you did for the head of the household. If there are two persons in the household with the same first and last names, they must be further identified by a middle initial or name or as Sr., Jr., etc. Do not assume members of the household have the same last name. However, for each member of the household with the same last name as the person in the preceding column, enter a long dash instead of repeating the last name.

①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥
John Jr.	Betty	Olive	Samuel	John, Sr.	Thomas
Doe	—	Poe	—	Doe	Roe
Head	Wife	Daughter	Grandson	Father	Roomer

3 Questions lc-le - Questions lc and ld serve as reminders about persons who may be overlooked by the respondent. List each person named by the respondent in answer to these questions provided he is a household member. Question le serves to delete possible nonhousehold members from the list. There is an asterisk above the "Yes" box for questions lc-le that refers to the instruction, "Apply household membership rules."

a Household Membership - Generally, two categories of persons in a household are considered as members of the household.

- 1) Persons, whether present or temporarily absent, whose usual place of residence at the time of the interview is the household. Usual place of residence is the place where the person usually sleeps.
- 2) Persons staying in the household who have no usual place of residence elsewhere.

Further details are given in Sections 6-10 of this topic.

b Always ask any additional questions needed in order to properly determine who are household members. Examples of such questions are as follows:

- 1) How many days a week does your husband spend in the city where he works?

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

- 2) Does your daughter live in the town where she goes to college or does she sleep here and go back and forth to classes?
- 3) Do your family and your son's family all live and eat together?
- 4) Does your cousin have direct access to her room?

If you are in doubt whether to include a person as a member of the household, consider him a member of the household and explain the circumstances in an INTER-COMM.

- 4 Question 1f - Ask the question at this point to avoid asking unnecessary questions about active members of the Armed Forces who are not included in this survey.

- a Armed Forces - "Active duty in the Armed Forces" means full-time active duty in the U.S. Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps, or Coast Guard, and any National Guard unit presently activated as part of the regular Armed Forces. Included in "active duty" is the six-month period a person may serve in connection with the provisions of the Reserve Forces Act of 1955.
- b Do not count as members of the Armed Forces, persons working in civilian positions for the Armed Forces, persons serving in the Merchant Marines, persons in a National Guard unit not activated as part of the regular Armed Forces or civilians who train only part time as reservists.
- c Armed Forces Reserve - Persons who are in any reserve component of the Armed Forces but who only attend weekly reserve meetings, summer camp or the like are to be counted as members of the household.

- 5 If there is a "Yes" response to any of questions 1c-1f, ask "Anyone else" until a "No" response is received, and mark the "No" box or circle "N".

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

5 Delete the Name if Not Household Member

a If a person whose name has been listed on the questionnaire is considered to have a usual place of residence elsewhere, is living in a separate unit or is not a household member for any other reason (following the rules in Section 8 of this topic), delete as follows:

- 1) "X" out the column for that person from question 1 through item C.
- 2) For Armed Forces members, determine and indicate either "Living at home" or "Not living at home," then delete the column.
- 3) For persons other than Armed Forces members, explain the reason for the deletion.

b In deleting a person column, do not change the person numbers of other members of a household. See illustration.

1a. What is the name of the head of this household? b. What are the names of all other persons listed? c. I have listed (Read names). Is this correct? d. Have I missed anyone who usually lives here? e. Do any of the people in this household live elsewhere? f. Are any of the persons in this household on active duty with the Armed Forces? (Delete) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1b. FIRST NAME			1c. LAST NAME			1d. AGE		
	Yes	No		1	2	3	1	2	3
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>		John	Karen	Kathy			
				Jones					
2. How is -- related to --				Relationship	Relationship	Relationship			
				living at home HEAD	wife	daughter			
3. What is --'s usual place of residence?				Month	Date	Year	Month	Date	Year
Refer to Flashcard	BED DAYS			BED DAYS			BED DAYS		
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
1. Record									
2. Record where it was reported.									

6 Usual Place of Residence Defined

In most cases, usual place of residence means the place the person would name in reply to the question, "Where do you live?" More specifically, it is the place where the person usually sleeps. A usual place of residence must be specific living quarters held for the person to which he is free to return at any time. A mailing address alone does not constitute a usual place of residence.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

Living quarters which a person rents to or lends to someone else cannot be considered his usual place of residence during the time it is occupied by someone else. Likewise, vacant living quarters (sometimes furnished) which a person offers for rent or sale during his absence should not be considered his usual place of residence while he is away. If the living quarters are furnished, be sure the household is not just temporarily absent--see below.

Persons with no usual place of residence elsewhere include recent migrants, persons trying to find permanent living quarters and other persons who are staying temporarily in the unit and do not have a home of their own.

7 Household Members - Count the following persons as household members of the sample unit:

- a Persons who consider the sample unit as their home and who are:
 - 1) Living at home at the time of the interview; or
 - 2) Temporarily absent at the time of the interview, on vacation, visiting or on business. This includes bus drivers, railroadmen, traveling salesmen, etc., who usually do not stay long in one place, but who return home at intervals.
- b Persons who consider the sample unit as their home but who are in a general hospital, that is, a hospital where most patients remain for a short period of time only, regardless of how long their stay has been in the hospital.
- c New-born babies who have not yet left the hospital, even if born after the reference period.
- d Students of any age (including student nurses) who live in the sample unit while attending school. If they are at home on summer vacation at the time of the interview, consider them as household members of their own home.
- e Crew members of a vessel who consider the sample unit as their home. This rule applies regardless of the length of their trips and regardless of whether they are at home or on the vessel at the time of your visit.
- f Domestic or other employees who live with the household and sleep in the sample unit.
- g Boarders or roomers who regularly sleep in the sample unit.
- h Civilians who usually live in the sample unit but who are temporarily abroad on a vacation or in connection with their work.
- i Persons temporarily visiting with the household but who have no usual place of residence elsewhere.
- j Foster children, wards.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

8 Nonhousehold Members - Do not count the following persons as household members of the sample unit:

- a Persons who were formerly members of the household but who at the time of interview:
- 1) Are absent because they (regardless of age) are living elsewhere and attending school at the time of the interview. If they are home from school on summer vacation, count them at their home.
 - 2) Are inmates of correctional or penal institutions, mental institutions, homes for the aged or needy, rest homes or convalescent homes, homes or hospitals for the chronically ill or handicapped, regardless of how long they are expected to remain there.
 - 3) Are now living in nurses' homes, convents or monasteries, or other places in which residents may expect to reside for long periods of time.
 - 4) Are now working abroad if their regular place of duty is abroad.
 - 5) Are members of the Armed Forces on active duty. We do not include military personnel in this survey. For definition of Armed Forces, see Section 4, page D3-7.
- b Persons temporarily visiting with the household who have a usual place of residence elsewhere to which they are free to return to at any time.
- c Persons who take their meals with the household but usually lodge or sleep elsewhere.
- d Domestic employees or other persons employed by the household who do not sleep in the sample unit. If, however, they occupy quarters which have no cooking equipment but which are on the same property as the sample unit (main house), consider them as household members.

9 Special Classes of Persons

Persons with Two or More Homes - Some persons (or families) have two or more homes and they may spend part of the time in each. For such cases, you must first determine which unit should be considered the person's usual place of residence. This is the home that the person occupies most of the time. Note that this is not necessarily the person's legal or voting residence.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

If you are unable to determine the person's usual place of residence because he spends an equal amount of time at each home, consider him to be a resident of the sample unit if he is living there at the time of interview.

Persons Who Work Away from Home - Some persons sleep most of the week in one place to be near their work but may spend weekends or other nonwork periods in another place. Count such persons as members of the household in which they sleep most of the week.

Domestic Employees in Separate House or Cabin - If domestic employees sleep in a separate house or cabin, count them as a separate household if they have separate cooking equipment. If they do not have separate cooking equipment, count them as part of the main household.

Persons Who Have Just Moved Into the Housing Unit - Interview the household member living in the housing unit on the day of your interview regardless of when they moved into the unit. For example, suppose you make your first call to interview a household on Tuesday, and find no one at home. For some reason you are unavoidably prevented from calling back until Saturday, when you find that the family you would have interviewed on Tuesday has moved out and another family moved in on Thursday. Interview the household occupying the unit at the time of your interview, that is, Saturday.

Citizens of Foreign Countries - Citizens of foreign countries and other persons who are living on the premises of an embassy, ministry, legation, chancellory, or consulate are never to be interviewed. Consider any such place not to be included in any segment.

Citizens of foreign countries, who are not living on the premises of an embassy, etc., and have no usual place of residence elsewhere in the United States are to be considered residents of the sample unit and interviewed only under the following circumstances:

a They are permanently living in the United States.

or

b They are temporarily living in the United States and are going to school here, or are employed here, or are members of the family of a person going to school or employed here.

Consider those persons who are not included in either paragraphs a or b above as having a usual place of residence elsewhere.

Migratory Workers - Consider migrant farm or ranch workers and logging camp workers as household members of the sample unit IF they have no usual place of residence elsewhere in the United States.

① Household Membership (Continued)

①

- 10 Difficult Cases - If you cannot clearly determine from the instructions how to proceed in problem cases, call your office for assistance. Before calling, however, assemble all the information that you think would be useful to your office in advising you on how to proceed.

②

Question 2, Relationship

②

2 How is -- related to -- (Head of household)?	2 Relationship
	HEAD

- 1 Question 2, Relationship - Enter the relationship of each person to the head of the household. If the respondent has previously given you this information, you may record the relationship without asking the question.
 - a Head of Household - There must be one and only one head of the household. In some households you will find two or more unrelated persons sharing a housing unit. Since there can be only one head, designate one as the "Head" and call each of the others "Partner."
 - b Armed Forced Members - If an Armed Forces member is living at home and is reported to be the household head, show the family relationships accordingly. If an Armed Forces member is not living at home, designate the wife or other family member as the household head. Do not obtain any information about active Armed Forces members except income.
 - c If "Head" Deleted - If the person originally designated as the head of the household is deleted for any reason, designate another person as "Head" and change the relationship entries of the other household members if necessary. However, an Armed Forces member living at home would remain as "Head."
 - d Couples Living Together - You must ask question 2 of persons of the opposite sex living in the same household, and accept the response given. If they consider themselves as married (legally or not), treat them in the same manner as any other husband-wife situation.
- 2 Example of Relationship Entries - Some typical examples of relationship entries are: Wife, son, daughter, stepson, stepdaughter, father, mother, grandson, daughter-in-law, aunt, cousin, nephew, roomer, hired hand, partner, and maid.
- 3 Persons Unrelated to the Head - If there are any persons in the household who are not related to the head but are related to each other, their relationship to each other should be shown also. For example, list a roomer and his wife as "roomer" and "roomer's wife;" list a maid and her daughter as "maid" and "maid's daughter."

②

Relationship (Continued)

②

- 4 Persons in "Special Places," Rooming Houses, Etc. - In "special places" (institutions, hospitals, hotels for transients, facilities for housing students or workers, summer camps, trailer or tent camps) or rooming or boarding houses, follow the rules in paragraphs 2 and 3 above for relationship entries in question 2.
- 5 Separate Questionnaires for Nonrelated Persons - Complete a separate questionnaire for each listed unrelated person or family group in the household. After recording the names of all household members and completing questions 1 and 2 on the first questionnaire, transcribe the names and relationships of the unrelated household members to a separate questionnaire. Change the column number of each person to agree with the one on the first questionnaire. For example, a roomer is listed as Person 5. Transcribe his name and relationship to the first column of the second questionnaire and change the column number from 1 to 5.

On the cover page of the questionnaire for unrelated person(s), transcribe identification items 1 through 5 from the original questionnaire and ask question 6b, mailing address, of the unrelated persons. Often an unrelated household member may have a mailing address different from the household head. If the mailing address is the same as that entered in item 6a on the first questionnaire, mark the box "Same as 6a" in question 6b on this questionnaire. If the mailing address is different from that entered in item 6a, enter the mailing address in question 6b as reported by the respondent. Continue the interview for these persons in the prescribed manner after completing the interview for the basic family unit. Items 1-5 must be completed on the separate questionnaire even if you know, at this point, there will be no completed interview for the nonrelated person(s).

3

Question 3, Date of Birth, Age, Race, and Sex

3

				AGE		
				RACE		
				1 W		
				2 B		
				3 OT		
				SEX		
				1 M		
				2 F		
3. What is --'s date of birth? (Enter date and Age, and circle Race and Sex)			3.	Month	Date	Year

Ask question 3 for each person, enter date of birth and Age, and circle Race and Sex.

- 1 Age - Obtain the exact date of birth and enter it in the appropriate space; enter all four digits of the year. If you cannot get the exact date, enter the approximate date, or if you can get only the year, enter DK/DK/1919. From the date of birth, determine the age of the person on his last birthday using the Age Verification Chart (Card A). Verify the age with the respondent and then enter it in the "Age" box. For babies under one year of age, enter "Und. 1" in the answer space.

If the person refuses to give his own age or birth date or the age or birth date of someone else in the family, make the best estimate you can and indicate that the age is estimated, for example, "30 est." The following examples represent entries that would not be acceptable age estimates: "Over 25 years," "17+ years," etc. These examples are unacceptable because they are too general and do not indicate whether the person is a young adult, middle-aged, or an elderly person.

- 2 Race - Three codes are used for race: "W" for White, "B" for Black, and "OT" for Other. The race of the respondent can usually be marked by observation. Assume the race of all related persons is the same as that of the respondent unless you learn otherwise. Circle the proper letter when you are recording the person's race. If you cannot fill this item by observation, ask: "What is --'s race?" Use the following codes:

White: Includes Latin-Americans unless they are definitely Black, Indian, or other nonwhite.

Black: Black or Negro.

Other: Race other than White or Black, including Japanese, Chinese, American Indian, Korean, Eskimo, and Hindu.

Code the race of the father for persons of racial mixtures. Code the race of the child if different from the adopting parents.

③ Date of Birth, Age, Race, and Sex (Continued)

③

- 3 Sex - Circle the appropriate sex for each person after you have circled the race. The sex of a person can usually be determined from the name or relationship entries. However, names such as Marion and Lynn are used for both males and females. If there is any doubt, ask about the person's sex.

①

Item L, Selecting The Condition List

①

L	Ask Condition list _____.
---	---------------------------

There will be an entry of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 after "Ask Condition list ____" in item L to indicate the correct condition list, question 32, to ask.

- 1 EXTRA Units - For EXTRA units, use the same list used for the original sample unit. Enter the condition list number (1-6) in item L of the questionnaire for the EXTRA unit.
- 2 Added Units with No Preassigned Serial Numbers - If you add units to the listing sheet, find the condition list number assigned on the questionnaire with the highest serial number. Starting with the next number, assign numbers in sequence to each questionnaire for which serial numbers were not preassigned. For example, if "5" were entered on the questionnaire with the highest serial number, your entries in item L for subsequent questionnaires would be "6", then "1", then "2". Do not confuse this instruction with EXTRA units above.

Ⓒ

Item C and Reference Dates

Ⓒ

C	1. Record the number of Bed Days, Doctor Visits, and Hospitalizations	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.
		<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)
	2. Record each condition in the person's column, with the question number(s) where it was reported.			
	Reference dates			
	2-week period _____			
	12-month Bed Days and Doctor visit probe _____			
	Hospital probe _____			
		Q. No.	Condition	

1 Item C - Item C is placed in this position on the questionnaire for ready reference when filling succeeding pages.

a Item C1 indicates for each person:

- 1) The number of two-week bed days reported.
- 2) The number of two-week doctor visits reported.
- 3) The number of hospitalizations reported.

If no bed days, doctor visits or hospitalizations are reported for a person, indicate this in C1 by marking the "None" box in that person's column.

b Item C2 is provided for recording all conditions requiring Condition pages along with identification of the items in which these conditions were reported.

- 1) Conditions to be Entered in Item C2 - Enter in item C2 any conditions reported in answer to those probe questions that are specifically designed to pick up conditions during the course of the interview prior to the Condition page. These will be health problems or accidents resulting in two-week restricted activity (questions 10, 11); a doctor visit during the past two weeks (questions 11, 17); limitation of activity (question 28); or conditions listed in or reported while asking the condition list (question 32, if present during the specified reference period).

③ Item C and Reference Dates (Continued)

③

- a) A "Volunteered" condition is one given in response to probe questions not specifically designed to pick up conditions, pages 2-11, and must be present during the past two weeks. For example, if the response to probe question 18 is "I haven't seen a doctor since I went to him for my arthritis," ask: "Was your arthritis present during the past two weeks?" If so, enter "18-arthritis" in C2.
- b) Also enter in C2 certain conditions reported while completing the Condition page as described in Chapter 4. Chapters 5 and 6 contain instructions for entering conditions in C2 from the Doctor Visits and Hospital pages.
- c) If the respondent refuses to give the name of the condition, enter "Refused" in C2 with the source.

Do not enter in C2 any condition reported after the Hospital page. Footnote these conditions and where they were reported; if the household is reinterviewed and these conditions are reported at that time, the reinterviewer will be able to reconcile the differences.

- 2) Source of Condition - If a condition is reported during the asking of the probe questions, record the number of the probe question in item C2 at the time the condition is reported. If a condition is reported in some other part of the interview, record instead the type of page, abbreviating as follows:

Condition page - Cond.
Doctor Visits page - DV
Hospital page - Hosp.

- 3) Double Reporting of Conditions - If a condition reported in answer to a probe question is recorded in item C2 for a particular person and is reported again in answer to another question, do not record this condition again on another line of item C2. Instead, record the question number in which the condition was reported again. This entry should be made in an unfilled question number column in item C2 by the original question number entry. Do not enter the page type (Cond., DV, Hosp.) in item C for conditions previously reported. Entries of this kind should be made in item C only when conditions are first reported on these pages. See the following illustration:

HIS-100
(1978)

Ⓒ Item C and Reference Dates (Continued)

Ⓒ

C	1. Record the number of Bed Days, Doctor Visits, and Hospitalizations	B	C																							
	2. Record each condition in the person's column, with the question number(s) where it was reported. Reference dates 2-week period <u>Jan 2 . Jan 15</u> 12-month Bed Days and Doctor visit probe <u>Jan. 15</u> Hospital probe <u>Dec. 1</u>	C	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>BED DAYS</td> <td>DV</td> <td>HOSP.</td> </tr> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>____ (NP)</td> <td>____ (NP)</td> <td>____ (NP)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Q. No.</td> <td colspan="2">Condition</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td colspan="2"><u>2810 cataracts</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td colspan="2"><u>Hosp Norm Delivery</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td colspan="2"></td> </tr> </table>	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	____ (NP)	____ (NP)	____ (NP)	Q. No.	Condition			<u>2810 cataracts</u>			<u>Hosp Norm Delivery</u>						
BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.																								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)																								
____ (NP)	____ (NP)	____ (NP)																								
Q. No.	Condition																									
	<u>2810 cataracts</u>																									
	<u>Hosp Norm Delivery</u>																									

2 Reference Dates - "Reference dates" on page 2 under the instructions for item C2, will be filled in advance by the Regional Office.

- a If additional questionnaires are needed for unrelated household members or for EXTRA units, transcribe the correct reference dates to this space.
- b If an entire interview is delayed until the week following interview week, it will be necessary to update the reference period. Prepare a new calendar card showing the new reference period, that is, the two-week period ending the Sunday night immediately prior to your actual interview date. Also, correct the "Reference dates" entered in C2 to reflect the new reference period.
- c Two-Week Reference Period - The "past two weeks" refers to the two weeks (14 days) just prior to the week in which the interview is conducted. The two-week period starts with Monday and ends with (and includes) last Sunday night. Do not include any days of the interview week. For example, if the interview is conducted on Tuesday, January 17, 1978, "the past two weeks" would refer to the period beginning on Monday, January 2, 1978 through Sunday night, January 15, 1978.
- d 12-Month Bed Days, Doctor Visit Probe - This date is "last Sunday's" date a year ago, and is the closing date of the two-week reference period. For example, if you interview Wednesday, January 18, 1978, the reference date would be January 15, 1977.
- e Hospital Probe - This date is 13 or 14 months before interview week, to pick up hospitalizations which started before the 12-month reference period but which may have extended into it. It is the first of the month which preceded the month in which Monday of interview week falls. For example, if you're interviewing Thursday, February 2, 1978, the Monday of interview week was in January; therefore, the hospital probe reference date is December 1, 1977.

4

Question 4, Marital Status

4

If 17+, ask:															
4 Is -- now married, widowed, divorced, separated, or never married?	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>Under 17</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>Married - spouse present</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>Married - spouse absent</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>Widowed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>Divorced</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>Separated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>Never married</td> </tr> </table>	0	Under 17	1	Married - spouse present	6	Married - spouse absent	2	Widowed	4	Divorced	5	Separated	3	Never married
0	Under 17														
1	Married - spouse present														
6	Married - spouse absent														
2	Widowed														
4	Divorced														
5	Separated														
3	Never married														

- 1 For persons 17 and over, if it is obvious from the relationship entries that two of the household members are husband and wife, mark one of the "Married" boxes without asking the question.
 - a Mark "Married-spouse present" for each married household member whose spouse is also listed on the questionnaire. This includes Armed Forces members living at home as well as those whose spouses are temporarily absent.
 - b Mark "Married-spouse absent" for a married person who is not legally separated, and whose husband or wife is not a member of the same household. This includes Armed Forces members who are not living at home.
- 2 Annulled Marriages - Consider persons whose only marriage has been annulled as "Never married."
- 3 Separated Persons - Accept a respondent's statement that a person is separated. If, however, the respondent raises a question as to the meaning of "separated," explain that the term refers only to married persons who have a legal separation or who have parted because of marital discord.

Classify persons who are separated from their spouse because of the circumstances of their employment, service in the Armed Forces or similar reasons as married-spouse absent, not separated.

- 4 Common-Law Marriages - Consider persons with common-law marriages as "married", without asking the question.

(H)

Item H, At Home

(H)

H	If related persons 17 years old or over are listed in addition to the respondent, say: We would like to have all adults who are at home take part in the interview. Is your --, your --, etc., at home now? If --, ask: Please ask them to join us.	H	<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17
			<input type="checkbox"/> At home <input type="checkbox"/> Not at home

After completing questions 1-4, mark one box in item H for each person. Note the instruction that if related persons 17 years old or over are listed in addition to the respondent, say: "We would like to have all adults who are at home take part in the interview. Is your --, your --, etc., at home now?"

- 1 If other eligible respondents are at home, say: "Please ask them to join us." This procedure is a reminder to interview each ADULT for himself for the ensuing health questions if he is at home at the time of the interview. Since the remaining questions are about each person's own health, he should be the best source of information about them.
- 2 If "Not at home" is marked for a person who arrives later on in the interview, interview him also, but do not change the original entry. This rule applies even though the person arrives in time to answer some of questions 5-34.
- 3 In the case of unrelated persons (partners, roomers, etc.), this "at home" determination is not made until after completing the interview for all related members. Record "At home" for an unrelated person at the time you conduct the interview with that person. Persons unrelated to the head of the household who are related to each other are treated the same as any other family group.

Questions 5 through 9, Two-Week Activity Limitation

<p>This survey is being conducted to collect information on the Nation's health. I will ask about visits to doctors and dentists, illness in the family, and other health related items. (Hand calendar) The next few questions refer to the past 2 weeks, the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar, beginning Monday, _____ (date), and ending this past Sunday, _____ (date).</p>		
5a. During these 2 weeks, did -- stay in bed because of any illness or injury?	5a.	00 N } if age: 17- (6) 6-16 (7) Under 6 (9)
b. During that 2-week period, how many days did -- stay in bed all or most of the day?	b.	____ Days
6. During these 2 weeks, how many days did illness or injury keep -- from work? (For females): not counting work around the house?	6.	____ WL days (8) 00 <input type="checkbox"/> None (9)
7. During these 2 weeks, how many days did illness or injury keep -- from school?	7.	____ SL days 00 <input type="checkbox"/> None (9)
8. On how many of these -- days lost from $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{work} \\ \text{school} \end{array} \right\}$ did -- stay in bed all or most of the day?	8.	____ Days 00 <input type="checkbox"/> None
9a. (NOT COUNTING the day(s) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in bed} \\ \text{lost from work} \\ \text{lost from school} \end{array} \right\}$) Were there any (other) days during the past 2 weeks that -- cut down on the things he usually does because of illness or injury?	9a.	1 Y 2 N (10)
b. (Again, not counting the day(s) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in bed} \\ \text{lost from work} \\ \text{lost from school} \end{array} \right\}$) During that period, how many (other) days did he cut down for as much as a day?	b.	____ Days 00 <input type="checkbox"/> None

- 1 Read the introduction above question 5a to the respondent once to inform him of the purpose of the survey and some of the topics to be covered during the interview. This introduction also is designed to inform the respondent of the reference period for probe questions 5-12 and 14-17. Do this by handing him the calendar card with the appropriate two-week reference period marked in red and then indicate orally the beginning and ending dates of the two-week reference period as entered in "2-week period" of item C2. Ask all appropriate questions, 5-10, as a block for each individual, starting with the first person listed. Repeat the procedure for the next related household member and so on.
- 2 Ask questions 5-9 to obtain the number of days, if any, that each person in the household remained in bed, lost time from work or school, or restricted his usual activity because of illness or injury during the two weeks preceding the interview.
- 3 Question 5, Bed Disability Past Two Weeks - Ask question 5 to determine if the person you are asking about spent any days in bed during the past two weeks because of illness or injury.

⑤ - ⑨ Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

⑤ - ⑨

- a Day in Bed - Any day on which the person was kept in bed either all or most of the day because of illness or injury. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the daylight hours (or of the hours that the person is usually awake, if he works a night shift). Taking a nap on "general principles" should not be counted as a day in bed. Also, count all days as a patient in a hospital, sanitarium, or nursing home as bed days whether or not the patient was actually lying in bed at the hospital, sanitarium or nursing home. Exclude hospital days for a normal newborn, unless the baby had some complication or illness.
- b Bed - Anything used for sleeping, including sofa, cot or mattress. If a person was on the sofa watching TV because he was too ill to get around, he would be "in bed." The important distinction here is whether the person was ill enough that he had to be in bed for all or most of the day.
- 4 Question 6, Days Lost from Work - Ask this question for each individual in the 17+ age group to determine if the person you are asking about lost time from work during those two weeks because of illness or injury. Use the alternate version of the question for females.
- a Work - Paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary, commission or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters, or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also, include work in the person's own business, professional practice or farm, and work without pay in a business or farm run by a related household member.
- Exclude work around the house, volunteer unpaid work, such as for church, Red Cross, or charity, and service in the Armed Forces.
- b Work Loss Day - Any scheduled work day when more than half of the day was lost due to an illness or injury. If the person works only part of a day and he loses more than half of that time, count it as a day lost.
- c Disregard School Days - If a person 17 years of age or over goes to school instead of, or in addition to, working, record only the days lost from work (disregarding any days lost from school). Include any days lost from school for persons 17 and over in cutdown days, question 9.
- 5 Question 7, Days Lost from School - Ask this question if the person is aged 6-16 to determine if the person lost any days from school during the past two weeks because of illness or injury.

- a School Loss Day - Any scheduled school day when more than half of the day was lost due to an illness or injury. If a person goes to school only part of a day and he loses more than half of that time, count it as a day lost.
 - b School Vacation - Since school vacation periods are not all the same, ask this question even during periods of the year which might normally be considered school vacation periods.
 - c Disregard Work Days - If a person 6 through 16 years of age works instead of, or in addition to, going to school, record only the days lost from school (disregarding any days lost from work). Include any days lost from work for persons 6 through 16 years of age in cutdown days, question 9.
- 6 Check for Number of Days Reported in Questions 6 and 7 - Since very few people work seven days a week or go to school seven days a week, follow up such replies as "The whole two weeks" or "All last week," etc. Do not enter "14" or "7" automatically. Reask the question in order to find out the actual number of days lost from work or school. If a person actually lost 14 days from work or school during "the past two weeks," enter "14" but explain in a footnote that these days were actually lost.
- 7 Question 8, Number of Work-Loss or School-Loss Days in Bed - Ask question 8 only if the respondent reports bed days in question 5b and either work-loss days in question 6 or school-loss days in question 7. If "N" is circled in 5a, skip to question 9.
- a The purpose of question 8 is to determine if any of the bed days and days lost from work or school were the same days. The entry in question 8 can be equal to but not greater than the number of bed days reported in question 5b, or the work/school-loss days reported in question 6 or 7.
 - b In asking question 8, insert the number of work-loss days or school-loss days recorded in 6 or 7 for the first set of dashes. Select the words within the brackets that fit the situation. For example, if the person lost two days from work, ask question 8 as follows: "On how many of these two days lost from work did you stay in bed all or most of the day?" If one school day was lost, ask "On that day John lost from school, did he stay in bed all or most of the day?"
- 8 Question 9a, Restricted Activity Past Two Weeks - Ask question 9a for each person, unless he had 14 days in bed. In this case, circle "N" without asking the question. Question 9a has three purposes:

To find out if persons under 17 years had work-loss days or persons 17 or over had school-loss days. Do not record these in question 6 or 7.

⑤ - ⑨ Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

⑤ - ⑨

To find out if, in addition to any bed days or work or school-loss days reported earlier, the person cut down on his usual activities on any other days during the two-week reference period.

To find out if the person had any cut-down (restricted activity) days during the two-week period even though no bed days, school-loss or work-loss days were reported in questions 5-7. Include in question 9 any school-loss days reported for a child under 6.

a Things He Usually Does - The things a person usually does are the person's "usual activities." For school children and most adults, "usual activities" would be going to school, working, keeping house, etc. For children under school age, "usual activities" depend upon whatever the usual pattern is for the child which will, in turn, be affected by the age of the child, weather conditions, etc. For retired or elderly persons, "usual activities" might consist of almost no activity, but cutting down on even a small amount would mean that a person should answer "Yes" to the question.

"Usual activities" on Sundays or holidays are the things the person usually does on such days, such as going to church, playing golf, visiting friends or relatives, staying at home and listening to the radio, reading, looking at television, etc.

- 1) The following examples illustrate cases of persons cutting down on the things they usually do because of illness or injury: a person in school was kept away from school a person who worked away from home was kept away from work; a farmer or a housewife was kept from caring for the farm or the home either completely or had to cut out all but the essential chores; an elderly person who normally takes a daily walk in the park was kept from doing so.
- 2) In borderline cases, where "usual activity" is difficult to determine, accept the respondent's view of what he himself considers to be his "usual activities." For example, a man with a heart condition may still consider his "usual activity" to be "working" even though the heart condition has prevented him from working for a year or more. Accept his statement that "working" is his "usual activity." In another example, a man may say that a heart attack six months ago forced him to retire from his job or business; he does not expect to return to work, and considers his present "usual activities" to include only those associated with his retirement. The question, then, would refer to those activities.

b How to Ask - In asking question 9a, use the appropriate words within the brackets if days in bed or work-loss or school-loss days were reported earlier. Otherwise, omit the parenthetical phrase. Therefore, if no bed days or school or work-loss days were reported in questions 5-7, ask 9a as follows: "Were there any days during the past two weeks that -- cut down on the things he usually does because of illness or injury?" If a person had previously reported two work-loss days and one day in bed, ask the question as follows: "NOT COUNTING the day in bed, and days lost from work, were there any other days during the past two weeks that you cut down on the things you usually do because of illness or injury?"

9 Question 9b, Number of Cut-Down Days - The procedure is the same as that outlined for question 9a. The parenthetical phrases in 9b are used only if bed, work-loss, or school-loss days were reported previously.

a Cut Down as Much as a Day - A day of restricted activity (cut down) is a day when a person cuts down on his usual activities for the whole of that day on account of an illness or injury.

- 1) Restricted activity does not imply complete inactivity but it does imply the minimum of the things a person usually does. A special nap for an hour after lunch does not constitute cutting down on usual activities for as much as a day, nor does the elimination of a heavy chore, such as cleaning ashes out of the furnace or hanging out the wash. All or most of a person's usual activities for the day must have been restricted for the person to have a cut-down day.
- 2) The following are some examples of a person having to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day:

A housewife who expected to clean house after doing the breakfast dishes, then work in the garden and go shopping in the afternoon was forced to rest because of a severe headache, doing nothing after the breakfast dishes until she prepared the evening meal.

A young boy who usually played outside most of the day was confined to the house because of a severe cold.

A garage owner whose usual activities included mechanical and other heavy work was forced to stay in his office directing others, talking to customers, etc., because of his heart condition.

b The reference period for question 9 includes Saturdays and Sundays. ALL the days of the week are of equal importance in this question, even though the types of activities which were cut down might not be the same on weekends as on regular weekdays. If necessary, mention this to the respondent. To illustrate this concept, consider the following example:

HIS-100
(1978)

⑤ - ⑨ Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

⑤ - ⑨

A man who planned a fishing trip for Saturday and Sunday had to stay home from work Friday and was also too ill to go fishing both on Saturday and Sunday because of a flare-up of his back trouble. Assuming that this is the only time during the past two weeks in which he was bothered by back trouble, the correct entry for question 9b would be "2." The one work-loss day should have been reported in 6.

10

Question 10, Condition Causing Two-Week Limitation

10

If one or more days in 5-9, ask 10 otherwise go to next person.		
10a. What condition caused -- to	{ stay in bed miss work miss school cut down }	10a. Enter condition in Item C Ask 10b
	during the past 2 weeks?	
b. Did any other condition cause him to	{ stay in bed miss work miss school cut down }	b. Y N (NP)
	during that period?	
c. What condition?		c. Enter condition in Item C: 10b
Fill item C, (BED DAYS) from 5b for all persons.		

- 1 Ask parts a, b, and c of question 10 about each person for whom at least one day was reported in answer to questions 5-9.
- 2 In questions 10a and b, select the phrase or phrases from within the brackets according to the answers you have recorded in questions 5-9 for that person.
 - a If, for example, a person had two bed days in question 5b, one work-loss day in question 6, and three cut-down days in question 9b, ask question 10a as follows: "What condition caused you to stay in bed, miss work, or cut down during the past two weeks?" Then enter the condition(s) in item C2 and ask question 10b, "Did any other condition cause you to stay in bed, miss work, or cut down during that period?"

When multiple phrases are used, be sure to say "or" when asking the question since a person may stay in bed or miss work for different conditions. "And" implies you are referring to the same condition.

- b. If only cut-down days are recorded (question 9b), ask question 10a using only the phrase "cut down," and continue in the manner described above, referring only to "cut down" when asking question 10b. For example, "What condition caused you to cut down during the past two weeks?"

NOTE: If an operation or surgery is reported as the reason for the restricted activity, probe to determine the condition causing the operation and enter that in C2, regardless of whether the person still has the condition.

3 Complications of Pregnancy, Delivery, and Birth

- a If pregnancy is reported as the reason for restricted activity during the past two weeks, probe for the specific complication (morning sickness, swollen ankles, etc.) and record it with "Preg." in item C2. If you cannot obtain a specific complication, enter "Pregnancy" in item C2.
- b If delivery is reported for the mother as the reason for restricted activity (including any routine hospital days) during the past two weeks, probe for the specific complication (infected breast, hemorrhage, etc.) and record it with "Del." in item C2. If you cannot obtain a specific complication, enter "Normal delivery" in item C2.

10

Condition Causing Two-Week Activity Limitation (Continued)

10

c Do not record birth during the past two weeks for the baby unless there were birth complications for the baby or the baby had some other illness. For such cases, enter the specific condition; do not enter just "birth" in item C2.

4 Menstruation and Menopause

- a Record in item C2, any complication of menstruation causing restricted activity during the past two weeks. For example, excessive or slight "flow" or delayed or painful menstruation. If there were no complications but there was restricted activity, record "Menstruation."
- b Record in item C2, any menopause symptoms causing restricted activity during the past two weeks. If there were no symptoms but there was restricted activity, record "Menopause."

5 Illness Resulting from Vaccination or Immunization - Vaccination and immunization in themselves are not illnesses. However, they may cause temporary illness with such symptoms as fever, headaches, etc. Record in item C2 the symptom which resulted from vaccination or immunization if restricted activity days are reported in the past two weeks.

6 After completing question 9 or 10 for all persons, review the entries in question 5b for each person and enter the number of bed days reported in the "BED DAYS" box in C1 in each person's column.

The following illustration gives an example of how to record the bed days reported in question 5b in item C1.

C	1. Record the number of Bed Days, Doctor Visits, and Hospital Days.	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)
		— (NP)	— (NP)	— (NP)	— (NP)	— (NP)	— (NP)	5 (NP)	— (NP)	— (NP)

<p>This survey is being conducted to doctors and dentists, illness in the past two weeks. The next few questions refer to the beginning Monday, _____ (date).</p> <p>5a. During these 2 weeks, did --</p> <p>b. During that 2-week period, he</p>	Y (5b)	N	00	Days	Y (5b)	N	00	Days	Y (5b)	N	5	Days
	If age: 17+ (6) 6-16 (7) Under 6 (9)		If age: 17+ (6) 6-16 (7) Under 6 (9)		If age: 17+ (6) 6-16 (7) Under 6 (9)		If age: 17+ (6) 6-16 (7) Under 6 (9)		If age: 17+ (6) 6-16 (7) Under 6 (9)		If age: 17+ (6) 6-16 (7) Under 6 (9)	

Question 11, Two-Week Accidents or Injuries

11a. During the past 2 weeks, did anyone in the family, that is you, your --, etc., have any (other) accidents or injuries?	Y	N (12)	
b. Who was this? - Mark "Accident or injury" box in person's column.			11b. Accident or injury
c. What was the injury?			c. Injury
d. Did anyone have any other accidents or injuries during that period?	Y (Reask 11b and c)	N	
If "Accident or injury," ask:			
e. As a result of the accident, did -- see a doctor or did he cut down on the things he usually does?			e. Y (Enter injury in item C) N

1 Question 11a - This is the first time we ask a "family" question, that is, the question is asked once and covers all family members in the household. Insert the names or relationships of all family members when asking the question. If any accident or injury condition has been previously reported, insert the parenthetical "other." For example, "During the past two weeks, did anyone in the family, that is, you, your husband, or your son have any other accidents or injuries?"

a Accidents and Injuries - The terms "accident" and "injury" may be used interchangeably. There are cases, however, when an injury may occur when an accident is not involved, for example, a war injury, a shooting, a stabbing, etc.

b Injury - Cuts, bruises, burns, sprains, fractures, etc. "Insect stings," "animal bites," "heat or sun strokes," "blister," "frostbite," "frozen feet," and "poisoning" are also considered as injuries.

c Poisoning - Illnesses resulting from swallowing, drinking, breathing or coming in contact with some poisonous substance or gas. Poisoning may also occur from an overdose of a substance that is nonpoisonous when taken in normal doses. Exclude conditions which are diseases or illnesses, such as "poison oak," "poison ivy," "ptomaine or food poisoning."

2 Questions 11b-11d - Ask these questions as appropriate. If the respondent reports an injury, record the injury (cut hand, bruised leg, etc.) in the answer space for 11c. If there was an accident but no injury, enter the word "Accident" in the answer space for 11c. An example of this might be a person in a car accident who received no injury.

3 Question 11e, See a Doctor or Cut Down - If the response to 11e is "Yes," circle "Y" in that person's column and enter the question 11c entry in item C2. If a person had more than one accident or injury during the past two weeks, each one which resulted in a doctor visit or cut down activity must be entered separately in item C2 and a separate Condition page filled for each. However, if a single accident resulted in multiple injuries, enter these on a single line of item C2.

HIS-100
(1978)

⑪ Two-Week Accidents or Injuries (Continued)

⑪

Doctor Visit - Contact between a person and a doctor for the purpose of obtaining medical advice, treatment, or examination. Include telephone calls to or from a doctor, visits to a doctor's office, a clinic, a medical center, or the outpatient department of a hospital where a person goes for treatment or examination but where he may not actually see or talk to a doctor. If you learn that a person saw a dentist for this accident or injury, consider this as "Yes."

12

Question 12, Two-Week Dental Visits

12

12a. During the past 2 weeks, did anyone in the family go to the dentist?	Y	N (13)	
b. Who was this? - Mark "Dental visit" box in person's column.			12b. <input type="checkbox"/> Dental visit
c. During the past 2 weeks, did anyone else in the family go to a dentist? If "Dental visit," ask:	Y (Reask 12b and c)	N	
d. During the past 2 weeks, how many times did -- go to a dentist?			d. _____ No. of dental visits (NP)

1 Ask question 12a once for a family.

a Dentist - A person who has been trained in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of diseases of the teeth and adjacent tissues. Some examples are: Oral surgeon, orthodontist, periodontist, dental hygienist.

b Exclude visits for dental services given on a mass basis, such as examinations given a group of children at school. If you are in doubt, include the visit and explain the circumstances in a footnote.

2 Ask questions 12b-12d as appropriate.

13

Question 13, Last Saw Dentist

13

<p>13. ABOUT how long has it been since -- LAST went to a dentist?</p>	<p>1. 2-week dental visit</p> <p>2. Past 2 weeks not reported</p> <p>3. 2 weeks-6 months</p> <p>4. Over 6-12 months</p> <p>5. 1 year</p> <p>6. 2-4 years</p> <p>7. 5+ years</p> <p>8. Never/age 1 or under</p>
--	--

Mark the "2-week dental visit" box in question 13, without asking the question, for persons who have reported a two-week dental visit. Mark the "Never" box, without asking the question, for children age one or under even if dental visits have been reported for them. Ask 13 for all other persons and mark the appropriate answer box in each person's column as follows:

Past 2 weeks not reported - Mark this box if at this point the respondent reports a visit during the two-week reference period. Also, mark the "Dental visit" box in 12b and ask question 12d for that person. Record the new response in the answer column for this question for this person. If necessary, correct the entry in 12a.

2 weeks-6 months - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was before the two-week reference period but within the six-month period.

Over 6-12 months - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was between six and 12 months ago.

1 year - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was 12 or more months ago but less than two years ago.

2-4 years - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was two or more years ago but less than five years ago.

5+ years - Mark this box if the person's last dental visit was five or more years ago.

Never/Age 1 or under - Mark this box if the person has never visited a dentist or is one year old or under.

Question 14, Two-Week Doctor Visits

<p>14. During the past 2 weeks (the 2 weeks outlined in red on that calendar) how many times did -- see a medical doctor? Do not count doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.</p>	<p>14. <input type="checkbox"/> None _____ Number of visits } NP</p>
--	--

1 Question 14, Two-Week Doctor Visits - Ask question 14 for each person, using the parenthetical phrase "the two weeks outlined in red on that calendar," as often as necessary. The respondent must be kept aware of the two-week period and should be referred to the calendar at convenient points in the interview, especially in a large household. The instruction following question 14 is a reminder to you to exclude doctors seen while the person was a patient in a hospital.

2 Medical Doctor

- a The term "doctor" covers only medical doctors (MD) and osteopathic physicians (DO). Include all visits to medical doctors regardless of whether they are general practitioners or specialists. Ophthalmologists (occulists) have an MD degree and are counted as medical specialists.
- b Consulting chiropractors, chiropodists, dentists, podiatrists, naturopaths, Christian Science healers, opticians, optometrists or other types of people giving medical care are not counted.
- c Do not make a special inquiry about the kind of doctor consulted or tell the respondent the survey definition of who is considered a doctor. If the respondent volunteers he saw a chiropractor, rephrase the question and ask "Did you see or talk to a medical doctor during the past two weeks?"

3 Doctor "Visit" - A single contact between a person and a doctor or his representative for the purpose of obtaining medical advice, treatment or examination.

- a A visit by the person to the doctor, visits to a doctor's office, a clinic, a medical center and the outpatient department of a hospital where a person goes for treatment or examination but where he may not actually see or talk to a doctor.
- b A visit by the doctor to the person. If the doctor visits the household to see one patient and while there examines or visits professionally another member of the household, count this visit as "doctor seen" for each individual for each condition receiving the doctor's attention. However, do not count visits by visiting nurses or physical therapists to the home unless accompanied by a doctor.
- c Telephone calls to or from a doctor (except requests for appointments or inquiries about a bill), including calls concerning the obtaining or renewal of a prescription.

⑭ Two-Week Doctor Visits (Continued)

⑭

- d The case in which the person is himself a doctor and he followed his own treatment or advice.
- e Talking on an informal basis to a family member or friend who is a doctor to obtain medical advice.
- f Exclude visits for shots or examinations (such as chest X-rays) administered on a mass basis. Thus, if the person went to a clinic, a mobile unit or some similar place to receive an immunization, a single chest X-ray or a certain diagnostic procedure which was being administered identically to all persons who were at the place for this purpose, do not count this as a visit.

NOTE: However, physicals for athletes or the armed services are not mass visits, and are included in the doctor visits questions.

- g Do not count visits a doctor made to see the person while he was an inpatient in the hospital. A hospital inpatient is defined as a patient who remains overnight or longer.

⑮ Question 15, Two-Week Shots, X-Rays, Test, and Examinations

⑮

(Besides those visits)		
15a. During that 2-week period did anyone in the family go to a doctor's office or clinic for shots, X-rays, tests, or examinations?	Y N (16)	
b. Who was this? - Mark "Doctor visit" box in person's column.		15b. <input type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit
c. Anyone else?	Y (Reask 15a and c) N	
If "Doctor visit," ask		
d. How many times did -- visit the doctor during that period?		d. _____ Number of visits (NP)

- 1 The wording of question 15a depends on the answer to question 14. If one or more visits were reported in question 14, ask question 15a with the introductory parenthetical phrase. For example, if there were two persons in the household, head and wife, and three visits were reported in question 14 for the head, ask question 15a as follows: "Besides those visits during that two-week period, did either of you go to a doctor's office or clinic for shots, X-rays, tests, or examinations?" If no visits were reported in question 14, ask question 15a without including the parenthetical phrase. Any visits recorded in question 14 should not be recorded in question 15.
- 2 Ask questions 15b-15d as appropriate.

16

Question 16, Two-Week Advice by Phone

16

16a. During that period, did anyone in the family get any medical advice from a doctor over the telephone?	Y N (17)	
16b. Who was the phone call about? - Mark "Phone call" box in person's column.	16b.	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone call
16c. Any calls about anyone else?	Y (Reask 16b and c) N	
If "Phone call," ask:		
16d. How many telephone calls were made to get medical advice about -- ?	16d.	_____ Number of calls

- 1 Ask question 16a regardless of the answers to questions 14 and 15. For this question, include telephone calls to or from the doctor or doctor's office which are related to treatment or advice given by the doctor directly or transmitted through the nurse. Do not count telephone calls solely for making an appointment, discussing a bill, or calls confined to some topic not directly related to the person's health. If telephone calls have already been reported in the earlier "visit" questions, do not record them again in question 16.
- 2 Ask questions 16b-d as appropriate.

HIS-100
(1978)

17

Question 17, Condition Causing Two-Week Medical Advice

17

Fill item C, (DV), from 14-16 for all persons. Ask 17a for each person with visits in DV box.		<input type="checkbox"/> Condition (Item C THEN 17d)
		<input type="checkbox"/> Pregnancy (17e)
		<input type="checkbox"/> No condition
17a. For what condition did -- see or talk to a doctor during the past 2 weeks?	17a.	
b. Did -- see or talk to a doctor about any specific condition?	b.	Y N (NP)
c. What condition?	c.	Enter condition in Item C Ask 17d
d. During that period, did -- see or talk to a doctor about any other condition?	d.	Y (17c) N (NP)
e. During the past 2 weeks was -- sick because of her pregnancy?	e.	Y N (17d)
f. What was the matter?	f.	Enter condition in Item C (17e)

1 Make Entry in "DV" Box in C1 - Review the entries in questions 14-16 for each person and enter the total number of doctor visits reported in the "DV" box in C1 in each person's column before going to question 17. The following illustration will give an example of how to record the visits reported in questions 14-16 in item C1.

C	1. Record the number of Bed Days, Doctor Visits.	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.	C	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.	BED DAYS	DV	HOSP.
		<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) 1 (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)		<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP) ____ (NP)
14.	During the past 2 weeks (the 2 weeks outlined in red Do not count doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.)	00 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None ____ Number of visits } NP	14.	00 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> None ____ Number of visits } NP	00 <input type="checkbox"/> None 1 Number of visits } NP						
(Besides these visits)											
15a.	During that 2-week period did anyone in the family clinic for shots, X-rays, tests, or examinations?		15b.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit	<input type="checkbox"/> Doctor visit						
b.	Who was this? - Mark "Doctor visit" box in person's column.										
c.	Anyone else?										
	If "Doctor visit," ask:										
d.	How many times did -- visit the doctor during that period?	1 Number of visits (NP)	d.	____ Number of visits (NP)	____ Number of visits (NP)						
16a.	During that period, did anyone in the family call a doctor over the telephone?										
b.	Who was the phone call about? - Mark "Phone call" box in person's column.		16b.	<input type="checkbox"/> Phone call	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Phone call						
c.	Any calls about anyone else?										
	If "Phone call," ask:										
d.	How many telephone calls were made during that period?	____ Number of calls (NP)	d.	____ Number of calls (NP)	1 Number of calls (NP)						

- 2 Question 17 - Ask question 17 for each person with doctor visits reported in questions 14-16 to find out the specific conditions causing the visit.
- a Question 17a, For What Condition - Ask question 17a, and record in item C2 each condition for that person after marking the "Condition" box. If in answer to question 17a, no specific condition is reported but the respondent reports pregnancy as the reason for the doctor visit, mark the "Pregnancy" box in that person's column. Include as visits for pregnancy, visits by the woman for consultation or checkups during the pregnancy. If the reason for the doctor visit(s) was for an examination or preventive care only, mark the "No condition" box in question 17a; for example, to obtain birth control pills. Also mark the "No condition" box if the reason for the visit was a test to see if the person had the condition. For example, a glaucoma test, TB test, diabetes test or a pap smear for cancer. Do not enter the condition in C2 unless the person has the condition.
- b Questions 17b and c, Any Specific Condition - Ask question 17b as an additional probe to determine if the person saw the doctor about any specific condition, and if so, what that condition was. Record all conditions reported in answer to 17c in item C2.
- c Question 17d, Any Other Condition - Ask question 17d as a reminder to the respondent about any other condition for which treatment or advice was received during the doctor visit(s). Once you get a "No" response to question 17d, go to the next person and ask question 17a, if it is required.
- d Questions 17e and f, Pregnancy - Ask questions 17e and f only if you marked the "Pregnancy" box in question 17a.
- 1) Question 17e, Sick Because of Pregnancy - The purpose of 17e is to find out if there was any sickness during the past two weeks because of the pregnancy. Do not consider pregnancy as an illness condition and do not record it in item C2 unless there were some complications or illness conditions associated with it during the past two weeks. "Sick" means whatever the respondent thinks it means--make no attempt to define it to her.
- 2) Question 17f, Condition of Pregnancy - If the respondent reports some sickness during the past two weeks because of the pregnancy ("Yes" in 17e), ask question 17f and record the condition in item C2 for that person.

NOTE: If an operation or surgery is reported as the reason for the doctor visit, probe to determine the condition causing the operation and enter that in C2, regardless of whether the person still has the condition.

18

Question 18, Twelve-Month Doctor Visits

18

<p>18a. During the past 12 months, (that is since _____ (date) _____ a year ago), about how many times did -- see or talk to a medical doctor? (Do not count doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.) (Include the -- visits you already told me about.)</p> <hr/> <p>b. ABOUT how long has it been since -- LAST saw or talked to a medical doctor? Include doctors seen while a patient in a hospital.</p>	<p>18a. 000 <input type="checkbox"/> Only when in hospital 000 <input type="checkbox"/> None Number of visits</p> <hr/> <p>b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-week DV 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks not reported (14 and 17) 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 wks.-6 mos. 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 6-12 mos. 5 <input type="checkbox"/> 1 year 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 2-4 years 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 5+ years 8 <input type="checkbox"/> Never</p>
--	--

- 1 Ask both parts of question 18 as a block for each person after completing question 17 for all family members. Do not include dental visits in question 18. If you learn reported visits are dental visits, rephrase the questions to "Exclude the dental visit you told me about," and "... last saw or talked to a medical doctor, not counting the dentist?"
- 2 Question 18a, Twelve-Month Doctor Visits - Ask question 18a inserting the date entered in "Reference dates" for "12-month Bed Days, and Doctor Visit prove" and include the first parenthetical statement the first time the question is asked and at any other time you feel it necessary. If any two-week doctor visits have been reported for this person, include the second parenthetical statement inserting the number of doctor visits previously reported for the dashes.
 - a If "checkup" is mentioned, rephrase the question by asking "Including any visits for a checkup, how many separate visits did you make to a doctor since -- a year ago?" Here, as in the dental visit question, we want to count each visit.
 - b If you learn that any of the visits reported in question 14 or 15 occurred while the person was a patient in the hospital, correct the answer(s) to exclude the inpatient visits. If all of the person's visits during the 12-month period were while in the hospital, mark the "Only when in hospital" box.
- 3 Question 18b, Interval Since Last Saw Doctor - The instruction following 18b is a reminder to you that seeing a doctor while a hospital inpatient is included in 18b, but not in 18a.

Mark the "2-week DV" box in 18b, without asking the question, for persons who have reported a two-week doctor visit. Ask 18b for all other persons and mark the appropriate answer box in each person's column as follows:

18 Twelve-Month Doctor Visits (Continued)

18

Past 2 weeks not reported - Mark this box if at this point the respondent reports a visit during the two-week reference period.

Reask questions 14 and 17 for that person and make the necessary corrections in these questions. Correct the entry in the "DV" box in item C1 for that person, record in item C2 any new condition reported and verify or correct 18a.

Make corrections to the two-week doctor visit probe questions only when asking this question. Do not change the entries in questions 14-16 because of any information given later in the interview but do correct C1.

NOTE: If the doctor was seen during the past two weeks only while the person was an inpatient in a hospital, do not mark a box in 18b. Footnote "2 Wk. DV. while a patient in hospital."

Mark the remaining answer categories using the rules given for question 13.

19 - 20

Questions 19 and 20, Major Activity

19 20

<p>17+ 17+</p> <p>Age 6-16</p>	<p>19a. What was -- doing MOST OF THE PAST 12 MONTHS (pause) working or doing something else? If "something else," ask (f or female) keeping house, attending, or doing something else?</p> <p>b. What was -- doing? If 45+ years and was not "working," "keeping house," or "going to school," ask:</p> <p>c. Is -- retired?</p> <p>d. If "retired," ask: Did -- retire because of his health?</p> <p>20a. What was -- doing MOST OF THE PAST 12 MONTHS going to school or doing something else? If "something else," ask: b. What was -- doing?</p>	<p>19. 20.</p> <p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> Working (24a) 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Keeping house (24b) 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Retired, health (23) 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Retired, other (23) 5 <input type="checkbox"/> Going to school (26) 6 <input type="checkbox"/> 17+ something else (23) 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 6-16 something else (23)</p> <p>8 <input type="checkbox"/> 1-5 years (21) 9 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 1 (21)</p>
--	---	--

1 Ask questions 19-28 as a block for each person. The instructions in the left margin indicate which question to ask first, or item to mark, depending on the person's age. Ask all persons 17 years or older question 19a first; all persons 6-16 years of age question 20a first. For children under six, mark either the "1-5 years" box or the "Under 1" box. As a guide to the proper order of asking questions 19-28, instructions have been printed to the right of each answer space indicating where to go next when you are to skip to another question.

2 Questions 19 and 20, Main Activity During Past 12 Months - Emphasize the phrase "most of the past 12 months" to remind the respondent you are referring to the entire year, not just to the present time. If a person says that he has had more than one kind of activity, mark the activity at which the person spent the most time during the past 12 months. Thus, if a woman has kept house and also worked, mark the box which describes the activity that took up most of her time during the past 12 months. If the person spent equal time at two types of activities, select the one which the person considers more important.

a How to Ask Questions 19a-d, Persons Aged 17 Years and Over - When asking these questions for males, ask question 19a as follows: "What was -- doing MOST OF THE PAST 12 MONTHS (pause) working or doing something else?" Ask the question similarly for females, but use the alternate wording.

- 1) If the response to 19a fits any of the appropriate boxes, "Working," "Keeping house," (even for men), or "Going to school," mark that box.
- 2) If the response is "Something else," ask question 19b. If this response corresponds to one of the check boxes, mark the appropriate one. If the response is "Retired," ask 19d. If the person is aged 17-44 and the response to 19b does not correspond to one of the first five check boxes, mark the "17+ something else" box.

- 3) If the person is 45 years old or over and the response to question 19b does not correspond to one of the first five check boxes, ask question 19c. If the response to question 19c is "Yes," ask 19d. If the response to 19c is "No," mark the "17+ something else" box.
 - 4) If the response to any part of 19a-c is "Retired," ask 19d. If this is "Yes," mark the "Retired, health" box. If any other reason for retirement is given, or if the response is "No," mark the "Retired, other" box.
 - 5) Consider persons in the Armed Forces most of the past 12 months and now separated from the service, as "17+ something else" unless they are 45+ and you have determined they are retired. For these persons, ask 19d.
- b Questions 20a and b, Persons 6-16 Years of Age - If the response is "Going to school," "Working" or "Keeping house," mark the appropriate box and follow the instructions in the parentheses. If "Something else" is the response, ask question 20b. If the response to 20b cannot be assigned to one of the check boxes, mark the "6-16 something else" box.

HIS-100
(1978)

21

Question 21, Limitation of Activity for Children 1-5 Years of Age

21

21a. Is he unable to take part in ordinary play with other children?	21a.	Y	N (21)
b. Is he limited in the kind of play he can do because of his health?	b.	Y (20)	N
c. Is he limited in the amount of play because of his health?	c.	Y (26)	N (22)

If a child is unable to play strenuous games or is unable to run or jump or climb because of his health, he would be limited in the "kind of play he can do because of his health." (21b)

If a child needs special rest periods or is unable to play for long periods at a time because of his health, consider him as "limited in the amount of play." (21c)

22

Question 22, Limitation of Activity for Children Under One year of Age

22

22a. Is he limited in the amount of play because of his health?	22a.	Y	N (22)
b. Is he limited in the kind of play he can do because of his health?	b.	Y (26)	N (22)

If a condition is given in response to question 22a or b, reask 22b to determine how the child is limited. Enter the condition if no other information is given. A limitation of a child under one year of age might include extra long rest periods, limited play activity, and so forth.

23

Question 23, Retired or "17-Something Else"

23

a. Does his health now keep him from working?	23a.	Y (23)	N
b. Is he limited in the kind of work he could do because of his health?	b.	Y (23)	N
c. Is he limited in the amount of work he could do because of his health?	c.	Y (23)	N
d. Is he limited in the kind or amount of other activities he could do because of his health?	d.	Y (23)	N

- 1 Question 23a, Health Keeps from Working - If the person's major activity was reported as "Retired, health," "Retired, other" or "17+ something else," ask question 23a to find out if the person's health presently keeps him from working. Many times a person who has retired from one job because of health, is able to do some other kind of work, for example, the bricklayer who retired because of a bad back is now the manager of a retail liquor store.
- 2 Question 23b, Limited in Kind of Work - Ask question 23b to determine if the person's health would limit the kind of work he could do if he were to work. Since the person, in most cases, will not presently be working, the word "could" in 23b and c is used to convey the idea that if the person were presently working, would he be limited by his health.
- 3 Question 23c, Limited in Amount of Work - Ask question 23c to determine if the person's health would limit the amount of work he could do if he were to work.
- 4 Question 23d, Limitation in Kind or Amount of Other Activities - Ask question 23d to determine if the person's health limits the kind or amount of his other activities. Other activities include anything other than work, such as recreation, sports, hobbies, church, etc.

24

Question 24, Limited in Kind or Amount of Work of Housework

24

Question	Y (246)	N
a. In terms of health, is he/she able to work or keep house at all?	1 Y (25)	1 N (25)
b. Is he/she limited in the kind of work or housework he can do because of his health?	2 Y (28)	N
c. Is he/she limited in the amount of work or housework he can do because of his health?	2 Y (28)	N
d. Is he/she limited in the amount of other activities he can do because of his health?	1 Y (26)	N (27)

- 1 Question 24a, Now Have a Job - Ask question 24a of all persons who reported "Working" in question 19 or 20 to determine if they presently have a job.
- 2 Question 24b, Now Able to Work or Keep House at All - Ask question 24b of all persons whose usual activity was working, but who do not have a job now, and of persons whose usual activity was keeping house. When asking 24b-d, select the appropriate word within the parentheses.

The concept of "unable" means general overall inability to work or keep house because of some illness or injury.

- 3 Question 24c, Limited in Kind of Work or Housework - Consider a person who is unable to do certain kinds of manual work because of his health, such as lifting or carrying materials, or a person who is unable to work where a lot of standing or walking is required, as limited in the kind of work he can do.

Consider a housewife who is unable to do certain kinds of housework which require her to lift heavy materials or do strenuous housework, such as scrubbing floors, as limited in the kind of housework she can do.

- 4 Question 24d, Limited in Amount of Work or Housework - Consider a person who is unable to work full time or must have periodic rest periods because of his health as being limited in the amount of work or housework he can do.

- 5 Question 24e, Limited in Other Activities - Ask question 24e to determine if the person, although not limited in his main activity, is limited in other types of activities. Limited in kind or amount of other activities refers to those persons who are only limited in their outside activities, for example, limitations in participating in sports, clubs, hobbies, church, civic projects, athletics, games, etc.

25 26

Questions 25 and 26, "6-16 Something Else," or "Going to School"

25 26

25. In terms of health, could he be called a "something else"?	5. Y	1 N
26a. Does (would he have to go to) a certain type of school attendance of less than 1 day?	2 Y (25)	N
b. Is he (would he be) limited in school attendance because of his health?	2 Y (25)	N
c. Is he limited in the kind or amount of other activities because of his health?	3 Y (25)	N

- 1 Question 25, Able to go to School - Ask question 25 only if the "6-16 something else" box is marked in questions 19 and 20, to determine if the person is able to go to school, although his major activity during the past 12 months was something else.
- 2 Question 26, Limited to Certain Types of Schools or Kind of School Activity - Ask question 26 about those persons reported in questions 19 and 20 as "Going to school" or "6-16 something else" but able to go to school ("Y" circled in 25).
 - a Questions 26a and b, Limited to Certain Types of Schools or in School Attendance - When "Y" has been circled in 25, ask 26a and b using the parenthetical phrase (would) and (would he be). Consider a person who attends a special school or a person who can attend school for only part of a day as being limited.
 - b Question 26c, Limited in Kind or Amount of Other Activities - Ask question 26c to determine if a person, although not limited in school attendance, is limited in other types of activities. For purposes of this question, other activities might include participation in various recreation or sporting activities.

HIS-100
(1978)

27

Question 27, Limited in ANY WAY

27

27a. Is -- limited in ANY WAY because of a disability or health?	27a. Y	SN (HP)
b. In what way is he limited? Record limitation, not condition.		

Ask question 27 about all persons 1+ years of age who did not report any activity limitation in question 21, 23, 24, or 26. This question serves to remind the respondent of limitations that were not reported in answer to earlier questions. "Disability" is included in question 27, because some people do not think of missing limbs, blindness, and things of that nature as health problems. If you are aware of such a situation, do not probe or record it unless the respondent reports it. If a condition is given in response to question 27a or b, reask 27b to determine how the person is limited. Enter the condition if no other information is given.

28

Question 28, How Long Limited and Cause

28

28a. About how long has he { been limited in -- been unable to -- had to go to a certain type of school? }	28a. 000 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 1 month 1 _____ Mos. 2 _____ Yrs.
b. What (other) condition causes this limitation? If "old age" only, ask: Is this limitation caused by any specific condition?	b. Enter condition in item C Ask 28c <input type="checkbox"/> Old age only (NP)
c. Is this limitation caused by any other condition?	c. Y (Reask 28b and c) N <input type="checkbox"/> Only 1 condition
Mark box or ask: d. Which of these conditions would you say is the MAIN cause of his limitation?	d. Enter main condition

- 1 Ask question 28 of all persons who reported some kind of activity limitation in questions 21-27 to determine how long the person had this limitation and what condition causes it.
- 2 How Long Had This Limitation - In question 28a, we want to know the length of time the person has been limited by this health problem, not how long the person has had the condition causing the limitation.
 - a In asking question 28a choose the appropriate phrase within the brackets and add to it the italicized portion of the question where the limitation was reported. For example, if the response to 23b was "Yes," ask question 28a: "About how long has he been limited in the kind of work he could do?"
 - b If the limitation is reported in question 23a, ask question 28a as: "About how long has he been unable to work?"
 - c When a limitation is reported in question 22 or 27, insert the respondent's description of the limitation when asking 28, for example, "About how long has he been unable to drive a car?" If the final answer to question 22 or 27 is a condition, ask question 28, "About how long has he been limited by his?"
- 3 Questions 28b-d, Condition Causing Limitation - Ask questions 28b-d to determine what condition causes a person's activity limitation and if more than one is reported, which one is the main cause of the limitation. Record the condition(s) in item C2 using "28" as the source.
 - a How to Ask - Ask question 28b, enter the condition in that person's column in item C2, and then go to 28c. Continue to reask 28b, using the parenthetical "other," and 28c until a "no" is obtained.

If you have received a condition in response to question 22 or 27, record the condition and 28 in C2, skip 28b and ask 28c.

HIS-100
(1978)

28

How Long Limited and Cause (Continued)

28

- b "Old Age" is Reported - Occasionally the answer given to question 28b will be "Old age." Do not enter "Old age" in item C2. Instead, ask the alternate question below question 28b and record the condition(s) in item C2. If the limitation can be attributed to no other condition, mark the "Old age only" box and go to the next person.
- c Limitations Due to Pregnancy or Recent Injuries - If the only condition(s) reported in answer to question 28 is pregnancy, delivery or an injury which occurred less than three months ago, for example, a broken leg, which did not result in obvious permanent disability, enter the name of the condition in a footnote, but do not make an entry in C2. Reask the question which picked up the limitation using an introductory statement, such as "Except for your broken leg, would you be limited in the kind of work you could do because of your health?" and correct the original entry. Continue to ask any other appropriate limitation questions for this person.

This applies whether these conditions were reported alone or with other conditions. Pregnancy and recent injuries are not considered as limitations covered by these questions.

- d Main Condition - Question 28d determines which condition is the main cause of a person's activity limitation when two or more conditions have been reported in questions 28b and c.
- 1) If only one condition has been reported in questions 28b and c, mark the "Only one condition" box in that person's column, and omit question 28d.
 - 2) After asking question 28d, enter the condition that the respondent says is the main cause of the activity limitation in the answer space for that person, then go to the next person. If in response to question 28d, the respondent mentions a condition not previously reported, enter that condition in 28d and also in item C2.
 - 3) If the respondent is unable to determine the main cause from several, indicate this by an entry of "unable to select main cause," "all the same," "both," or something similar.

NOTE: If an operation or surgery is reported as the reason for the limitation, probe to determine the condition causing the operation and enter that in C2, regardless of whether the person still has the condition.

29

Question 29, Hospitalizations Since Specified Date

29

29a. Was -- a patient in a hospital at any time since (date) a year ago?	29a.	Y	N (Item C1)
b. How many times was -- in a hospital since (date) a year ago?	b.	Times (Item C1)	

- 1 Although the survey is primarily concerned with hospitalizations which occurred during the past 12 months, for statistical purposes, we also need to know about hospitalizations which occurred just before the past 12 months. In this way we obtain information about hospitalizations which started before the "past 12 months" and extended into the 12-month period. For these reasons the hospitalization probe question is asked for a period of 13 to 14 months.
- 2 Ask question 29a separately for each household member, inserting the "Reference date" entered in C2 for the "Hospital probe." If no hospitalizations are reported, circle "N" in 29a and mark the "None" box in the "HOSP." column in item C1 for this person.
- 3 Ask 29b for each person for whom the answer to question 29a is "Yes." Enter the number of times in the column for that person and in the "HOSP." box of item C1.
- 4 Patient in a hospital - being admitted and staying overnight or longer in a hospital. Exclude visits to emergency rooms, or outpatient clinics.

HIS-100
(1978)

30

Question 30, Stays in Nursing Homes, Etc.

30

30a. Has anyone in the family in a nursing home, convalescent home, or similar place since _____ (date) _____ a year ago?	Y	N (31)	
b. Who was this? - Circle "Y" in person's column.			30b. Y
If "Y," ask:			
c. During that period, how many times was -- in a nursing home or similar place?			c. _____ Times (Item C)

- 1 "Nursing home, convalescent home or similar place," means any type of home, sanitarium or other such type of place which provides medical or personal care to persons because of health reasons, advanced age or the like. Unlike patients in general hospitals, patients in these places usually remain for long periods of time. Examples of these places are: Nursing homes, mental institutions, TB sanitariums, convalescent homes, homes for the aged, etc. The length of time a person may have been a patient in a place of this type does not affect its inclusion as long as the person is a household member at the time of interview.
- 2 If one or more nursing home "stays" are reported, record the number in 30c, then go to the "HOSP." box in item C1. Correct the previous entry for this person and enter the total number of hospital and nursing home "stays" reported in 29 and 30.

31

Question 31, Check on Question 29

31

Ask for each child 1 year old or under if date of birth is on or after reference date.		
31a. Was -- born in a hospital? If "Yes," and no hospitalizations entered in his and/or mother's column, enter "1" in 29b and item C. If "Yes," and a hospitalization is entered for the mother and/or baby, ask 31b for each.	31a.	Y N (NP)
31b. Is this hospitalization included in the number you gave me for --? If "No," correct entries in 29b and item C for mother and/or baby.	31b.	Y N

1 Question 31 insures that hospitalizations for deliveries or births are counted. If no baby aged one or under is listed, make no entries in question 31 but go to question 32.

2 Question 31a - If a child aged one or under is listed on the questionnaire, look at question 3 of the column in which the baby is listed. If the baby's birth date is before the reference date, no further questions or entries for question 31 are required.

If the baby was born within the hospital reference period (on or after the date entered in C2 and before last Sunday (midnight)), ask question 31a. If the answer to this question is "Yes," check question 29b for both the baby and the mother to see if any hospitalizations have been reported. If no hospitalizations have been reported for either the baby or the mother, enter "1" in question 29b for both the baby and the mother. If a hospitalization has been reported for the mother but not the baby (or vice versa), enter "1" in question 29b for the baby and ask question 31b for the mother (or vice versa). If a hospitalization has been reported in question 29b for both the baby and the mother, then ask 31b for both the baby and the mother.

3 Question 31b - Ask and mark question 31b for the baby and the mother if any hospitalizations were reported in question 29b for either, and you have determined in answer to question 31a that the baby was born in a hospital within the reference period. If the answer to 31b is "No," change the entry in 29b and item C to reflect this "missed" hospitalization.

4 Typical Situations - Here are two examples which illustrate the procedure:

a You are interviewing in January 1978. You have an 18-month old child listed on the questionnaire as a one-year old, with question 3, date of birth, as July 7, 1976, (the reference date for the hospital probe is December 1). Since the baby was not born within the time reference period, you do not need to make any entries in question 31.

③ Check on Question 29 (Continued)

③

- b Or, for example, there is a baby listed as "Und. 1." The baby's birth date is within the reference period so you ask question 3la, "Was the baby born in a hospital?" You find out that the baby was born in a hospital but see that no hospitalizations have been recorded in question 29b for the baby, but two hospitalizations have been recorded in question 29b for the mother. The instruction for 3la tells you to enter "1" in 29b and item C for the baby and ask question 3lb for the mother to determine if the two hospitalizations already entered in 29b for her include her hospitalization for the baby's delivery. You find that it does not, so change the "2" hospitalizations already recorded in question 29b and in item C for the mother to "3."
- 5 In filling this question, remember that question 3la refers only to the baby and the entries should appear only in his column of the questionnaire. For question 3lb, the entries can apply either to the mother or the baby or both, depending on whether either or both had a hospitalization reported in question 29b.

Question 32, Condition List

- 1 Question 32 contains 6 lists of selected conditions that affect different systems of the body. Refer to the number entered in item L to determine which condition list to ask. Ask only one list in each household.

If you are questioned as to the meaning of any of the listed terms, use the definitions printed on the questionnaire for that particular list. Do not attempt to explain or define any of the conditions further.

The basic rules for all 6 lists are the same.

- a Begin each list with question 32a, inserting the names or relationships of all family members for the parentheses the first time you ask the question and emphasize the reference period for the list you are asking. Then read the first listed condition. Record all conditions reported while asking question 32, even if the condition is not specifically listed, if the condition is present during the particular reference period you are asking about. An additional probe may be necessary to determine this.

After reading each condition, wait for a "Yes" or "No" reply before going to the next condition. This procedure is necessary in order to be certain the respondent has had time to think about each condition. If two or more respondents are present, wait for each person to reply to a condition before going on to the next condition. As you ask each condition, make a check mark (✓) in the column to the right of it to keep your place in the list.

- b When you receive a "Yes" response, ask question 32b, "Who is (or was) this?" and record the condition and letter in item C2 in the appropriate person's column. If a "Yes" response is given to two or more conditions listed together, ask additional probes as necessary to determine which condition or part of body is involved and enter this response in C2.
- c Then ask 32c for the condition. For example, "Does anyone else have glaucoma?" If "Yes," ask 32b and enter the condition and letter in item C2 in that person's column. Continue reasking 32b and c until you receive a final "No" answer to that condition. Then ask about the remaining conditions by reasking the main question without the parenthetical phrase. This is to remind the respondent that we are interested in whether anyone in the family has or had any of the remaining conditions.

32 Condition List (continued)

32

- d If the same condition is reported more than once for the same person in question 32, enter only the letter for the item where it was first reported. Thus, you will have only one letter per condition for a person in item C2. It is extremely important that the letter be entered in C2 so that you will ask the correct questions on the Condition page.
- 2 If a condition is given out of turn or not in answer to the one you're asking about, probe to determine if the condition was present during the reference period. If so, enter the condition and letter at which it was reported in C2 and reask the question about the listed condition you just mentioned.
- 3 Throughout the lists of conditions there are "catch-all" groups containing the words "any other" or "any disease of " with a part of body italicized. Whenever an italicized part of body included in these "any other" groups is reported prior to the asking of the condition lists, consider them to be question 32 conditions. Enter the appropriate letter beside the condition in C2 and rephrase the question to exclude that condition and person.
- Keep in mind however, that the part of body must be reported exactly as shown in the condition list you are using in that household.
- If the respondent just says "Yes" to a catch-all" group without reporting a specific condition, record the listed item verbatim in C2; for example, "Bladder trouble."
- 4 When a SPECIFIC condition in question 32 has already been reported prior to the asking of the condition lists, also enter the appropriate letter beside the condition in C2 and rephrase the question when you come to that condition, excluding that person or condition.
- 5 Also, throughout the condition lists there are certain words that are in all capital letters. Emphasize these words when asking about these conditions so the respondent is aware of them. An additional probe may be necessary.

If the respondent just says "yes" to one of these conditions, a probe is unnecessary, enter the condition in C2. However, if the person gives a qualified answer, such as "Yes, I have flatfeet." probe to determine if the person has "TROUBLE."

1

1

<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have -- If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ? Conditions affecting the digestive system.</p>	A. Gallstones?	I. Any disease of the pancreas?
	B. Any other gallbladder trouble?	J. Ulcer?
	C. Cirrhosis of the liver?	K. Hernia or rupture?
	D. Fatty liver?	L. A disease of the esophagus?
	E. Hepatitis?	M. Gastritis?
	F. Yellow jaundice?	N. FREQUENT indigestion?
	G. Any other liver trouble?	O. Any other stomach trouble?
	H. Diabetes?	P. Enteritis?
<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have -- If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ? Conditions affecting the digestive system.</p>	Q. Diverticulitis?	W. Cancer of the stomach, colon or rectum?
	R. Colitis?	<p>X. During the past 12 months, did anyone in the family have any other condition of the digestive system? If "Yes," ask: Who was this? - What was the condition? (Enter in item C)</p>
	S. Spastic colon?	
	T. FREQUENT constipation?	
	U. Any other bowel trouble?	
	V. Any other intestinal trouble?	

A Condition list 1 contains selected conditions that affect the digestive system. Keep in mind the 12-month reference period when asking this list.

1 Do not consider flu, grippe, or cold affecting the digestive system as 32 conditions and do not record them in C2 even if answered in response to list 1. For example, "stomach flu" would not be considered a 32 condition.

2 In item X, do not consider other digestive conditions reported earlier as 32 conditions unless they are reported while asking this condition list. For example, do not consider gastroenteritis as a digestive condition unless reported while asking list 1.

Condition List (continued)

2

2

2	<p>32a. Does anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) NOW have - If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who is this? Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. Does anyone else have . . . ?</p>	<p>A. Permanent stiffness or any deformity of the foot, leg, fingers, arm or back? (Permanent stiffness - joints will not move at all)</p>	
	<p>32d. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have - If "Yes," ask 32e and f.</p> <p>e. Who was this? Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>f. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ?</p> <p>Conditions C-N and V are conditions affecting the bone and muscle.</p>	<p>B. Paralysis of any kind?</p>	<p>C. Arthritis of any kind or Rheumatism?</p>
2	<p>32d. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have - If "Yes," ask 32e and f.</p> <p>e. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>f. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ?</p> <p>Conditions O-U and W-Z are conditions affecting the skin.</p>	<p>D. Gout?</p>	<p>J. A slipped or ruptured disc?</p>
		<p>E. Lumbago?</p>	<p>K. Curvature of the spine?</p>
		<p>F. Osteomyelitis? (os-tee-oh-my-uh-lite-iss)</p>	<p>L. REPEATED trouble with neck, back, or spine?</p>
		<p>G. A bone cyst or bone spur?</p>	<p>M. Bursitis or Synovitis? (sin-uh-vite-iss)</p>
		<p>H. Any other disease of the bone or cartilage?</p>	<p>N. Any disease of the muscles or tendons?</p>
		<p>O. A tumor, cyst or growth of the skin?</p>	<p>U. Dermatitis or any other skin trouble?</p>
		<p>P. Eczema or psoriasis? (so-rye-uh-sis)</p>	<p>V. TROUBLE with fallen arches, flatfeet or clubfoot?</p>
<p>Q. TROUBLE with dry or itching skin?</p>	<p>W. TROUBLE with ingrown toenails or fingernails?</p>		
<p>R. TROUBLE with acne?</p>	<p>X. TROUBLE with bunions, corns, or calluses?</p>		
<p>S. A skin ulcer?</p>	<p>Y. A disease of the hair or scalp?</p>		
<p>T. Any kind of skin allergy?</p>	<p>Z. Any disease of the lymph or sweat glands?</p>		

B List 2 consists of selected musculoskeletal and skin conditions and is made up of two parts. The first part contains two conditions that must be present NOW, that is, as of last Sunday night.

The second part of this list, conditions C through Z, do NOT have to be present now, but must have been present at some time DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS.

3	<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have --</p> <p>If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have ...?</p>	A. Goiter or other thyroid trouble?	} Glandular disorders		
		B. Diabetes?			
		C. Cystic fibrosis?			
		3	<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have --</p> <p>If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have ...?</p>	D. Anemia?	} Blood disorder
				E. Epilepsy?	
				F. Multiple sclerosis?	} Conditions affecting the nervous system
				G. Migraine?	
3	<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have --</p> <p>If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have ...?</p>	H. Neuralgia or neuritis?	} Conditions affecting the nervous system		
		I. Sciatica?			
		J. Nephritis?			
		3	<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have --</p> <p>If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have ...?</p>	K. Kidney stones?	} Genito-urinary conditions
				L. Any other kidney trouble?	
				M. Bladder trouble?	
				N. Prostate trouble?	
3	<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have --</p> <p>If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have ...?</p>	O. Disease of the uterus or ovary?			
		P. Any other female trouble?			

C List 3 contains conditions of the genito-urinary and nervous system and glandular disorders. The reference period for this list is the PAST 12 MONTHS.

NOTE: Do not ask item N, prostate trouble, in all all female household, and concersely, do not ask items O and P, disease of the uterus or ovary and any other female trouble in an all male household.

32 Condition List (continued)

4

4

4	<p>32a. Does anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) NOW have - If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who is this? - Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. Does anyone else have . . . ?</p> <p>A-L are conditions affecting { hearing; vision; speech }</p>	A. Deafness in one or both ears?	H. A detached retina or any other condition of the retina?
		B. Any other trouble hearing with one or both ears?	I. Any other trouble seeing with one or both eyes even when wearing glasses?
		C. Tinnitus or ringing in the ears?	J. A cleft palate or harelip?
		D. Blindness in one or both eyes?	K. Stammering or stuttering?
		E. Cataracts?	L. Any other speech defect?
		F. Glaucoma?	M. A missing finger, hand, or arm, toe, foot, or leg?
		G. Color blindness?	N. A missing (breast), kidney or lung?
4	<p>32a. Does anyone in the family NOW have - If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who is this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. Does anyone else have . . . ?</p> <p>Conditions O-W are impairments.</p> <p>Conditions Y and Z affect the nervous system.</p>	O. Palsy or cerebral palsy?	U. Permanent stiffness or any deformity of the back, foot, or leg? (Permanent stiffness - joints will not move at all)
		P. Paralysis of any kind?	V. Permanent stiffness or any deformity of the fingers, hand, or arm?
		Q. Curvature of the spine?	W. Mental retardation?
		R. REPEATED trouble with back or spine?	X. Any condition caused by an old accident or injury? If "Yes," ask "What is the condition?"
		S. Any TROUBLE with fallen arches or flatfeet?	Y. Epilepsy?
		T. A clubfoot?	Z. REPEATED convulsions, seizures, or blackouts?

D List 4 contains selected conditions that usually cause some kind of disability or limitation and the reference period is "NOW."

"Now" refers to the present time, that is, as of last Sunday night. If a person has had any of the listed conditions but they have been corrected by surgery or some other means and are not present now, do not enter them in C2. For example, a cataract that was removed 6 months ago, or temporary paralysis caused by a stroke with no present effects now, would not be recorded in C2.

1 For "REPEATED" conditions, the person need not have had the condition as of last Sunday night if he is subject to periodic recurring attacks of the condition. For example, he would not have had to have a convulsion last Sunday night if he frequently experiences convulsions.

4

4

- 2 Do not include "breast" when asking item N in an all male household.
- 3 If the person earlier reported a condition which you know is a deformity, such as a short leg, do not enter "U" in C2 unless the condition is reported when asking list 4.
- 4 If the term "retina" is in C2, enter H next to this condition. However, do not consider retinitis as a 32 condition unless it is reported while asking list 4. The word "retina" must appear to be considered as a 32 condition.
- 5 In item X, an old accident is one which happened three or more months ago.

5	<p>32a. Has anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) EVER had -- If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? -- Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. Has anyone else ever had...? Conditions affecting the heart and circulatory system.</p>	A. Rheumatic fever?	G. Stroke or a cerebrovascular accident?
		B. Rheumatic heart disease?	H. Hemorrhage of the brain?
		C. Hardening of the arteries or arteriosclerosis?	I. Angina pectoris?
		D. Congenital heart disease?	J. Myocardial infarction?
		E. Coronary heart disease?	K. Any other heart attack?
		F. High blood pressure?	
5	<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have -- If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months did anyone else have...? Conditions affecting the heart and circulatory system.</p>	L. Damaged heart valves?	R. Gangrene?
		M. Tachycardia or rapid heart?	S. Varicose veins?
		N. Heart murmur?	T. Hemorrhoids or piles?
		O. Any other heart trouble?	U. Phlebitis or thrombophlebitis?
		P. Aneurysm?	V. Any other condition affecting blood circulation?
		Q. Any blood clots?	

E List 5 contains selected conditions that affect the heart and circulatory system.

Notice that this condition list has different reference periods. Conditions A - K have a reference period of EVER had and conditions L - V refer only to the PAST 12 MONTHS.

Record in item C2 any condition reported while asking conditions A - K regardless of whether or not the condition was present during the past 12 months or is present now.

For L - V conditions, record in C2 only those conditions which were present during the past 12 months. Bring this to the respondent's attention as often as you feel it necessary.

NOTE: In item V, do not consider other circulatory conditions reported earlier, as 32 conditions unless they are reported while asking question list 5. For example, "pericarditis" reported in question 28, is not considered a 32 condition unless reported while asking this list.

<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family (you, your --, etc.) have --</p> <p>If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? -- Enter name of condition and letter of line where reported in appropriate person's column in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months did anyone else have . . . ?</p> <p>Conditions affecting the respiratory system.</p>	<p>A. Bronchitis?</p> <p>B. Bronchiectasis? (brong ke-ek tah-sis)</p> <p>C. Asthma?</p> <p>D. Hay fever?</p> <p>E. Nasal polyp?</p>	<p>F. Sinus trouble?</p> <p>G. Deflected or deviated nasal septum?</p> <p>H. Tonsillitis or enlargement of the tonsils or adenoids?</p> <p>I. Laryngitis?</p>
	<p>*If reported in question 32 only, ask:</p> <p>1. How many times did -- have . . . in the past 12 months? -- If 2+ enter in item C.</p> <p>If only 1 time, ask:</p> <p>2. How long did it last? -- If 1 month or longer, enter in item C. If less than 1 month, do not record.</p> <p>If tonsils or adenoids removed during the past 12 months, enter in item C.</p> <p>Make no entry in item C for cold; flu; red, sore, or strep throat; or "virus" reported in answer to question 32.</p>	
<p>32a. DURING THE PAST 12 MONTHS, did anyone in the family have --</p> <p>If "Yes," ask 32b and c.</p> <p>b. Who was this? Enter in item C.</p> <p>c. During the past 12 months, did anyone else have . . . ?</p> <p>Make no entry in item C for cold; flu; red, sore, or strep throat; or "virus" reported in answer to question 32.</p> <p>Conditions affecting the respiratory system.</p>	<p>J. Tumor, cyst, or growth of the bronchial tube or lung?</p> <p>K. Emphysema?</p> <p>L. Pleurisy?</p> <p>M. Tuberculosis?</p> <p>N. Abscess of the lung?</p>	<p>O. Tumor, cyst, or growth of the throat, larynx, or trachea?</p> <p>P. Any work-related respiratory condition such as dust on the lungs, silicosis or pneu-mo-co-ni-o-sis?</p> <p>Q. During the past 12 months did anyone in the family have any other respiratory, lung, or pulmonary condition? If "Yes," ask: Who was this? -- What was the condition? (Enter in item C)</p>

F List 6 is made up of respiratory conditions. The reference period for this list is the PAST 12 MONTHS.

- As noted at the bottom of the list, you are not to consider cold; flu; red, sore, strep throat; or virus as question 32 conditions whether they are reported prior to or during the asking of list 6.

This includes "Virus, unspecified;" or a combination of virus and one of the other excluded conditions, for example "virus cold;" "virus flu;" "virus, red, sore or strep throat." However, "virus pneumonia" DOES require an entry in C2.

32 Condition list (continued)

32

6

6

- 2 Letters H and I in this list are marked with an asterisk; (*) tonsillitis or enlargement of the tonsils or adenoids, and laryngitis. If you receive a "yes" to one of them, ask 32b to determine who had the condition, and look at item C2 for this person. If the condition has not already been recorded in C2, ask questions 1 and 2 below list 6 to determine whether or not to make an entry in item C2.

These questions are designed to screen out single, brief episodes of tonsillitis or enlarged tonsils or adenoids, or laryngitis. You will record these conditions in item C2 from question 32 only if there was more than one episode in the past year, or if a single episode lasted one month or longer.

- a Ask question 1, "How many times did you have tonsillitis in the past 12 months?" If the person had the condition more than once in the past 12 months, record the condition and letter in C2. If the person had the condition only one time during the past 12 months, ask question 2, "How long did it last?" If it lasted one month or longer, record the condition and letter in item C2. If the condition lasted less than one month, do not record it.
- b If a person tells you his tonsils or adenoids were removed during the past 12 months, enter the condition, tonsillitis, etc. in C2 without asking the screen question or regardless of the answer(s) to the screen questions if they've already been asked.

After asking the screen questions for this person, ask 32c and follow the same procedure for questions 1 and 2 for the next person reporting the asterisked condition.

- c If any of the asterisked conditions were reported before question 32, do not ask the screen questions. Treat these as other respiratory conditions reported prior to the asking of question 32 and enter the letter, H or I, next to the condition in C2.

G In summary, consider as question 32 conditions:

- a Any condition reported while asking question 32, if present during the reference period, except flu, grippe, or cold for list 1; and cold; flu; red, sore, strep throat, or virus when asking list 6.
- b Any condition reported prior to asking question 32 if it mentions a specific part of the body that is in italics in the list you are asking. For example, if list 1 was asked, include infected gallbladder or overactive thyroid as 32 conditions.

32 Condition list (continued)

32

c Any condition reported prior to asking question 32 if it is specifically in the list you are asking about. For example, gallstones in list 1 or cataracts in list 4.

Do NOT consider as question 32 conditions:

- a Any condition reported while asking question 32 if not present during the reference period for your list.
- b Any condition reported prior to asking question 32 if it is not specifically in you list, does not contain an italicized part of body, and is not reported again in the list of question 32 you are asking.

Question 33, General Health Question

33

33

33. Compared to other persons --'s age, would you say that his health is excellent, good, fair, or poor?

33. 1 E 2 G 3 F 4 P

Question 33 is a general health question to determine the respondent's own evaluation of his health and that of each member of his family as compared to other persons of the same age. If the respondent does not understand, reask the question emphasizing the phrase, "Compared to other persons --'s age." Circle the appropriate response according to the respondent's reply.

Item BD, Question 34, 12 mo. Bed Days

BD

34

BD

34

BD	Mark box(es) from item C.	BD	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 - Bed Days <input type="checkbox"/> 2 - Hospital Stays <input type="checkbox"/> 3 - No Bed Days
	34. During the past 12 months (that is since _____ (date) _____ a year ago), ABOUT how many days did illness or injury keep -- in bed all or most of the day? (Include the days in the past 2 weeks.) (Include the days while a patient in a hospital.) (Was it more than 7 days or less than 7 days?) (Was it more than 30 days or less than 30 days?) (Was it more than half the year or less than half the year?)	34.	<input type="checkbox"/> 0 - None <input type="checkbox"/> 1 - 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 - 8-30 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 - 31-180 (6 months) <input type="checkbox"/> 4 - 181+ (6 months +)

- 1 Complete item BD from the entries in C1. The box(es) marked in BD indicate which parenthetical phrase(s) to use when asking question 34. If no bed days and no hospitalizations are indicated in C1, mark "No bed days" and ask question 34 without the parenthetical phrases at the end of the question. If either bed days or hospitalizations, but not both, are indicated in C1, mark the appropriate box in item BD and ask question 34 using the appropriate parenthetical statement. If both bed days and hospitalizations are indicated, mark both boxes in BD and ask question 34 using both parenthetical statements.

34 12 Month Bed Days (continued)

34

- 2 In asking question 34, use the reference date entered in C2 for "12-month Bed Days and Doctor visit probe" for the first person in the household and repeat it as often as you feel it is necessary.
- 3 Ask question 34 to obtain an estimate of the total number of bed days due to all illnesses or injuries during the past year. If the respondent is uncertain of the number of days, ask—"Was it more than 7 days or less than 7 days?" Ask the additional probe questions as necessary in order to mark the appropriate box.

Item R, Respondent

R

R

R Q's 4-34	For persons 17 years or over, show who responded for (or was present during the asking of) Questions 4-34	R	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self-entirely
	If persons responded for self, show whether entirely or partly. For persons under 17 show who responded for them.		2 <input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self-partly
		Person ___ was respondent	

Item R, Who Responded - Item R is used to identify the respondent for probe questions 4-34. Mark item R as follows:

- 1 Adult - If the person responded to questions 4-34 entirely for himself, mark the box "Responded for self-entirely. Consider a person to have responded entirely for himself if he was present (in the same room or within hearing distance) during the asking of all of questions 4-34, even if he did not answer any questions directly.
 - a If he responded partly for himself, mark the box "Responded for self-partly" and enter the column number of the person who partly responded for him. Consider a person to have "Responded for self-partly" if he was present (in the same room or within hearing distance) during the asking of at least one, but not all of questions 4-34.
 - b For adults not present, enter the column number of the person or persons who responded for them.
 - c Persons 17 and 18 years of age may respond for themselves if they live alone or are in the presence of a related adult but, unless they are married, cannot answer any questions for other family members.
- 2 Children - For unmarried persons under 17, enter in item R the column number of the person or persons who responded for them.
- 3 Interpreter - When an interpreter is involved, consider the person(s) providing the information to the interpreter as the respondent.

HIS-100
(1978)

CHAPTER 4. CONDITION PAGE

A General Procedure

Ask the questions on the Condition page separately for each condition recorded in item C2.

If a condition requiring a Condition page is first reported after you have completed the Probe pages, enter it in item C2 at the time it is reported. Fill a Condition page for this new condition after you have completed the entire page on which it was reported, for example, after completing all required columns for doctor visits or hospitalizations, unless it is reported on a Condition page. In this case, fill a Condition page for it before completing any other Condition pages.

B Order of Filling Condition Pages

Complete the Condition pages in the order they are listed in item C. Fill the first Condition page for the first condition listed for Person ①. Continue consecutively, condition by condition, until each condition recorded in item C2 for Person ① has been carried through a separate Condition page. Continue by carrying all of Person ②'s conditions listed through separate Condition pages, then Person ③, etc.

Enter in the box to the right of the condition in item C2, each condition number, which appears in the upper left-hand corner of the Condition page. Do this when the condition is carried from item C2 to the Condition page.

C Extra Questionnaire Needed for More Than Six Conditions

If there are more than six conditions reported, use extra questionnaires and number the Condition pages consecutively. Thus, for more than six conditions, you must change the number of the first Condition page in the second questionnaire to seven.

D Types of Reporting Problems

1 Dental Conditions - If teeth were pulled or other dental surgery performed, record in question 3 the name of the disease or condition that necessitated the pulling of the teeth or surgery.

2 Pregnancy and Delivery

Record the complication(s) of pregnancy (such as morning sickness or hypertension) or delivery (such as phlebitis or anemia) in question 3a. Complete questions 3b through 3e according to the rules for each part. For delivery, and delivery complications, mark the date of onset according to the date of delivery.

- 3 Mental Illness - If mental illness is reported by the respondent, try to get the medical name and record it in question 3a. If the medical name is not known, enter a description of how it affects the person.
- 4 Operations - If the only description the respondent gives of an illness is the name of an operation, ask what the condition was that made the operation necessary and record that condition in question 3b. Also, record any present ill-effects mentioned. "Vasectomy" is on Card C and is an exception to this rule.
- 5 Refused - If the name of the condition has previously been refused, enter "Refused" in item 1 and complete this Condition page with as much information as you can obtain.
- 6 Reaction to Drugs - If the respondent reports a reaction to drugs taken causing illness with restricted activity or medical attention in the past two weeks, three things should be recorded in 3a: The reaction, the drug, and the reason for taking the drug. For example, "skin rash - penicillin - virus." (See page D4-14, par. 4.)
- 7 Caution About Deciding Two Conditions Are the Same - Do not attempt to "diagnose" conditions which appear to be the same or to make decisions that the two conditions are the same because they seem to be alike, for example, "deformed foot" and "club foot."
 - a Do not probe to determine whether two conditions are the same. It is only when the respondent indicates they are the same by his answers to the questions or when the names of conditions are identical, that you are to consider the two conditions as the same. Otherwise, record them separately in item C2 and carry each condition through a separate Condition page.
 - b If the names of the conditions are identical or if the respondent actually says that one condition is the same as another for which you have already completed a Condition page, follow this procedure:
 - 1) Leave the separate entries for each condition reported, but enter a footnote on the two Condition pages that the conditions are the same. Refer to the conditions by number, for example, for the first condition you would have "Same as cond. 2" and for the second "Same as cond. 1."

- 2) Since you will already have taken the first condition through all questions of a Condition page, you will usually not need to ask the remaining questions for any other condition which has been reported as being the same as the first one.

NOTE: Conditions listed or reported in question 32 require certain additional information. That is, questions 11-16 are required for conditions from 32, but are not required for conditions reported elsewhere. When you are asking about a condition listed or reported in question 32 and the respondent says that it is the same as a condition for which you have already completed a Condition page, be sure that on one of the pages you have asked all the questions appropriate for these conditions. For example, you have in item C2:

Question number 28 - Pain in back

Question number 4 - Curvature of spine

When filling the Condition page for "Curvature of spine," the respondent says the two conditions are the same. When you are told these are the same, skip to item AA and questions 11-16 on this page before footnoting "Same as condition 1." The reason for this is that these questions are not required for "Pain in back" but are required for "Curvature of spine" because it is a question 32 condition.

However, if the conditions had been reversed, that is, the "Curvature of spine" first, and the "Pain in back" next, and the respondent says they are the same, then you would need no more information on the page for "Pain in back" except the footnote that these conditions are the same.

E Questions 3a-e, Condition Details

For purposes of analysis, all illnesses and injuries reported must be translated into medical codes. Since the coding system in use provides for over 1,500 different conditions, it is desirable that the description of the conditions be as complete and detailed as possible. Questions 3a-e are designed to obtain this needed information.

- 1 The best description of a condition is its exact medical title. Sometimes the statements of respondents do not always give a complete description of the condition. When the respondent does not know the exact medical title of the illness, one or more of three different kinds of information generally needs to be obtained in order to assign the most exact medical code:
 - a The respondent's statement of the cause.
 - b A specific description of the kind of trouble.
 - c The part of the body affected.
- 2 Ask questions 3b-3e about the entries in question 3, not the entry in item 1.
- 3 IF ANY NEEDED ENTRIES FOR 3b-3e HAVE BEEN RECORDED PREVIOUSLY IN QUESTION 3, IT IS NOT NECESSARY TO REASK THE QUESTION OR REENTER THE ANSWER.

F When to Complete Separate Condition Pages

- 1 Complete separate Condition pages when question 3a contains more than one condition. For example:

Question 2B and item 1 - Pain in stomach

Question 3a - Bladder and Kidney Infection

Carry the first condition, "Bladder infection," through the remainder of this Condition page. Enter the second condition, "Kidney infection," in item C2 with "Cond." as the source, at the time it is reported so that a page will be filled for it before any other Condition pages are filled.

HIS-100
(1978)

- 2 Separate Condition pages are also required for each present effect reported for a condition the person no longer has. For example:

a Item 1 - Stroke

Question 3a - Stroke

Question 3b - High blood pressure

Question 3d - One entire leg stiff and one short arm

Carry the first condition, "Stiff leg," through the remainder of this Condition page. Enter the second condition, "One short arm" in C2 with "Cond." as the source and fill a Condition page for it before filling any other Condition pages.

b Item 1 - Paralysis

Question 3a - Paralysis

Question 3b - Polio

Question 3e - All of right arm and one drop foot

Carry the first condition, "Paralysis of the right arm," through the remainder of this Condition page. Enter the second condition, "Drop foot" in C2 with "Cond." as the source and fill a Condition page for it before filling any other Condition pages.

- 3 Complete separate condition pages for each present effect of the same accident reported in 18b. For example:

Item 1 - Arm injury

18b - One entire arm shriveled
One lower arm painful

In this case, enter "one lower arm painful" in C2 with "Cond." as the source, assuming the arm injury is the same as the first present effect reported, "one entire arm shriveled."

See also section H for separate Condition pages due to an accident or injury.

G Questions 4-8, Restricted Activity Past Two Weeks

The purpose of these questions is to separate the conditions causing persons to cut down on their usual activities for as much as a day, from those conditions not affecting usual activities. Ask questions 4-8 for each condition marked in item A2 without regard to the answers to probe questions 5-9 on pages 2 and 3.

- 1 Refer the respondent to the calendar card for questions 4-8 as often as necessary, since these questions refer to the past two weeks.
- 2 For injuries occurring less than three months ago, questions 4-8 refer to the injury itself and/or any ill-effects which were present during "the past two weeks." For injuries occurring more than three months ago, questions 4-8 refer to the present effects.
- 3 In Bed or in a Hospital - If a person is sick in bed or in the hospital (because of the condition you are asking about), always count him as cutting down on the things he usually does. This includes a chronic invalid who spends all of his time in bed because of the condition you are asking about.
- 4 Check for Number of Days Reported in Questions 7 and 8 - Since hardly anyone works seven days a week or goes to school seven days a week, follow up replies of "the whole two weeks," "all last week," etc. Do not enter "14" or "7" automatically but reask the question in order to find out the actual number of days lost from work or school. If a person actually lost 14 days from work or school during "the past two weeks," enter "14" but explain in a footnote that these days were actually lost.
- 5 Check Between Questions 5, 6, 7, and 8 - The number of days entered in question 5 (cut-down days) must be equal to or greater than the number of days entered in any one of questions 6, 7, or 8, since days in bed or days lost from school or work represent "cutting down on usual activities." If there are inconsistencies of this kind, ask additional questions to ascertain the correct number to be recorded.
- 6 Differences Between Restricted Activity Days in Probe Questions 5-9 and on the Condition Page - It is possible that the total number of days reported for all conditions will be greater than the number of days reported in probe questions 5-9 on pages 2 and 3, since the person on any given day can cut down or be in bed for more than one condition. Such entries may or may not be consistent. Therefore, do not compare the entries in probe questions 5-9 on pages 2 and 3 and the entries in questions 4-8 on the Condition page. Accept what the respondent reports.

H Questions 17-21, Accidents and Injuries

These questions obtain information about ALL accidents or injuries which are recorded on a Condition page.

- 1 Record multiple injuries, resulting from the same accident, together in the same set of accident questions on a single Condition page if the accident occurred during the past three months.

HIS-100
(1978)

- 2 Each separate accident requires a separate Condition page unless the same condition was caused by more than one accident, all of which occurred three months or more ago. In this case, fill the accident questions for the most recent accident and give the date(s) (month and year) of the other accident(s) in a footnote.
- 3 If a condition is caused by an accident that happened more than three months ago, and a later accident (less than three months ago) aggravated this condition, an additional Condition page is required. One Condition page will pertain to the earlier accident and the other to the one that happened less than three months ago. Enter the other injury in item C2 so that there are entries in C2 to correspond to the two Condition pages.
- 4 If two or more present effects reported in 18b are the results of the same accident, each requires a separate Condition page. In these cases, footnote "Same accident as condition _____," in questions 17-21. Fill a Condition page for each present effect in the same order as they are listed in question 18b. When such additional conditions requiring Condition pages are reported, enter them in item C2 at the time they are reported.

①

Item 1, Person Number and Name of Condition

①

1. Person number	Name of condition
------------------	-------------------

Transcribe the entries for item 1 to the Condition page before you ask question 2.

- 1 Person Number - Write in the number of the person who has the condition for which this particular Condition page is being filled.
- 2 Name of Condition - Transcribe the "Name of condition" verbatim as entered in item C2.

2

Question 2, When Last Saw or Talked to Doctor

2

2. When did -- last see or talk to a doctor about his . . . ?					
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	In interview	1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Last 2 wks. (Item C)	5 <input type="checkbox"/>	2-4 yrs.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	week	2 <input type="checkbox"/>	2 wks.-6 mos.	6 <input type="checkbox"/>	5 yrs.
(Recst 2)		3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Over 6-12 mos.	7 <input type="checkbox"/>	Never
		4 <input type="checkbox"/>	1 yr.	8 <input type="checkbox"/>	DK if Dr. seen
				9 <input type="checkbox"/>	DK when Dr. seen

1 Ask question 2 for each condition entered in item 1. In asking the question, substitute the name or relationship of the person for the dashes, and the name of the condition for the three dots.

a Doctor Seen or Talked To

This person saw or talked to a doctor if there was:

- 1) A visit by the person to the doctor, visits to a doctor's office, a clinic, a medical center or a hospital (either as an inpatient or an outpatient) where a person goes for treatment or examination but where he may not actually see or talk to a doctor.
- 2) A visit by the doctor to the person. If the doctor visits the household to see one patient and while there examines or visits professionally another member of the household, count this visit as "doctor seen or talked to" for each individual for each condition receiving the doctor's attention. However, do not count visits by visiting nurses or physical therapists to the home unless accompanied by a doctor.
- 3) Telephone calls to or from a doctor (except requests for appointments or inquiries about a bill), including calls concerning the obtaining or renewal of a prescription.
- 4) The case in which the person who had the condition is a doctor and he followed his own treatment or advice.
- 5) Talking on an informal basis to a family member or friend who is a doctor to obtain medical advice.

b Type of Doctor

- 1) The term "doctor" includes only medical doctors (MD) and osteopathic physicians (DO). Include all visits to medical doctors regardless of whether they are general practitioners or specialists. Ophthalmologists (occulists) have an MD degree and are counted as medical specialists. Also, include dentists (for dental conditions).

② When Last Saw or Talked to Doctor (Continued)

②

- 2) Consulting chiropractors, chiropodists, podiatrists, naturopaths, Christian Science healers, opticians, optometrists or other types of people giving medical care are not counted.
- 3) Do not make a special inquiry about the kind of doctor consulted or tell the respondent the survey definition of who is considered a doctor. If the respondent volunteers he saw a chiropractor, rephrase the question and ask "When did you last see or talk to a medical doctor?"

2 For conditions which usually last a long time, such as heart trouble, high blood pressure, hay fever, arteriosclerosis, arthritis, etc., a person might not consult a doctor every time he experiences an occurrence (attack) of the trouble. Question 2 refers to the last time a doctor was seen or talked to for that condition since it first started.

3 For conditions which usually last a short time, and which a person may have repeatedly, such as colds, virus, flu, injuries occurring less than three months ago (that did not result in obvious permanent disability), etc., question 2 refers to the last time a doctor was talked to about this particular episode. Question 2 does not refer to the times he talked to a doctor about previous attacks of colds, virus or other similar short-term conditions.

4 Mark the answer box for question 2 of each Condition page as follows:

In Interview Week - The respondent reports seeing a doctor during interview week. Rephrase question 2 to determine when a doctor was last seen at any time other than interview week for this condition. Do not change the original entry but mark the appropriate box for the new response. Thus, if "In interview week" is marked, you will also have another answer box marked. As a result of this "Never" may be marked, meaning a doctor was never seen before interview week.

Past 2 wks. - The respondent reports seeing a doctor during the two-week reference period. Look at the "DV" box in item C1 to determine if any doctor visits were reported for this person. If no doctor visits are recorded, enter "1" for this person in item C1. If there are doctor visits recorded, make no correction in C1. If you learn the visit was to a dentist, or while the person was an inpatient in the hospital, enter a footnote to this effect, but do not make any entry in C1.

2 wks.—6 mos. - The person's last doctor visit was before the two-week reference period but within the six-month period.

Over 6—12 mos. - The person's last doctor visit was between six and 12 months ago.

② When Last Saw or Talked to Doctor (Continued)

②

1 yr. - The person's last doctor visit was 12 or more months ago but less than two years ago.

2-4 years - The person's last doctor visit was two or more years ago but less than five years ago.

5+ years - The person's last doctor visit was five or more years ago.

Never - The respondent reports never having seen a doctor prior to interview week or reports seeing someone not counted as a medical doctor.

DK if Dr. seen - The respondent does not know if a doctor was ever seen for this condition.

DK when Dr. seen - The respondent cannot give an estimate as to when a doctor was seen for this condition.

A1

Interviewer Check Item A1

A1

A1	Examine "Name of condition" entry and mark	
	<input type="checkbox"/> Color blindness (NC)	<input type="checkbox"/> On Card C (A2)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident or injury (A2)	<input type="checkbox"/> Neither (3a)

- 1 Fill interviewer check item A1 immediately after recording the answer to question 2. Examine the "Name of condition" entry in item 1, then mark one of the three boxes.
- 2 "Color Blindness" - If the "Name of condition" entry in item 1 is color blindness, mark this box and go to the next condition.
- 3 "Accident or Injury" - If the "Name of condition" entry in item 1 or the respondent indicates that an accident or injury was involved, mark this box and go to item A2.
 - a Accidents and Injuries - Accidents may occur with or without a resulting injury. For purposes of this survey, we are not interested in accidents in which there was no injury involved, unless reported in probe question 11.
 - 1) Difference Between "Accidents" and "Injuries" - The terms "accident" and "injury" may be used interchangeably. There are cases, however, when an injury may occur when an accident is not involved, for example, a war injury, a shooting, a stabbing, etc.
 - 2) Injuries - There are many kinds of injuries, such as cuts, bruises, burns, sprains, fractures, etc. "Insect stings," "animal bites", "heat or sunstrokes," "blisters," "frostbite," "frozen feet," etc., are also considered as injuries.
 - 3) Poisonings - Illnesses resulting from swallowing, drinking, breathing or coming in contact with some poisonous substance or gas are also counted as injuries. Poisoning may also occur from an overdose of substance that is nonpoisonous when taken in normal doses.

Exclude conditions which are diseases or illnesses not classified as injuries, for example, "poison oak," "poison ivy," "ptomaine or food poisoning."

NOTE: Also mark this box if this page was completed because of multiple present effects of an old accident or injury in question 18b on a previous Condition page.

b Caution Regarding Accidents and Injuries

- 1) Do not mark the "Accident or injury" box for birth injuries to either the mother or the child. However, make sure that the injury occurred during the act of delivery, not later. For injuries occurring after birth, do mark this box.

(A1)

Interviewer Check Item A1 (Continued)

(A1)

- 2) A condition, such as "broken (perforated) (ruptured) eardrum" may be caused by an accident or injury or may be due to some other cause, such as childhood disease. Always ask what caused the broken eardrum or other such conditions.
 - 3) If the respondent does not know whether a condition was caused by an accident or injury, or cannot recall such an occurrence when an accident is indicated, do not mark this box. Explain the circumstances in a footnote, such as "Doctor says blow on head but respondent cannot recall."
 - 4) Exposure to heavy lifting, loud noise, and other similar hazards are considered injuries only when they are one-time occurrences. For example, a punctured eardrum resulting from a loud explosion would be considered an injury, but continued exposure to loud noises at work resulting in partial deafness would not be considered an injury. For the latter case, do not mark this box, but indicate that the condition was caused by continued exposure to loud noises at work. Follow the same procedure if the cause is continued heavy lifting, continued strain, etc.
- 4 "On Card C" - If the condition is not an injury and was not obviously caused by an accident, refer to Card C of the flashcard booklet to see if the condition is listed there. If it is listed, mark this box and go to item A2.
- a Names of illnesses given by respondents are often sufficient to permit medical coding without further probing. This is true of the specified conditions listed on Card C and so it is not necessary to ask questions 3a-e for these conditions. However, Card C is an exclusive list. Do not apply the Card C rule to conditions which you feel are synonyms of the listed conditions.

For example, "hernia (any type)" is on Card C, while "rupture" is not; mark the "Neither" box and ask questions 3a-e, as applicable, for "rupture" but mark the "On Card C" box for "hernia." "Stomach ulcer," "duodenal ulcer," "gastric ulcer," and "peptic ulcer" are on Card C while "ulcer(s)" (unspecified) is not. If you are in doubt, consider the condition not to be on Card C.
 - b If the condition is "trouble with" a specific condition on Card C such as corns, mark the "Card C" box.
 - c If the respondent volunteers the information that a Card C condition was caused by an accident, for example, bursitis caused by an accident, mark the "Accident or injury" box.
- 5 "Neither" - If the "Name of condition" entry in item 1 is not color blindness, is not an accident or injury, and is not on Card C, mark this box and go to question 3a.

3a

Question 3a, Name of Condition

3a

If "Doctor not talked to," transcribe entry from item 1.
If "Doctor talked to," ask:
3a. What did the doctor say it was? - Did he give it a medical name?

- 1 Ask question 3a when a doctor has been talked to about an illness, even if the only time a doctor was seen was during interview week and the "Never" box is marked in question 2. Also, ask question 3a if question 2 is marked "Never" but the person reported seeing a non-medical doctor, such as a chiropractor. If a doctor was not talked to about an illness condition, transcribe the item 1 entry to 3a without asking the question.

- 2 Enter whatever the respondent tells you the doctor said, using the respondent's own words. If the medical name given by the respondent is one which is unfamiliar to you, ask him to spell it for you. If the exact spelling is not known, record it phonetically but also ask the respondent to describe how it affects him and record a description of the condition. In all cases, remember that the entry in question 3a should be exact and as complete as possible. Therefore, if the respondent does not know the "medical name" or if his answer is vague, for example, "It's my liver," "I've got a bad heart," "Something I ate," "Some kind of ailment," do not accept it. Instead, ask the person to describe the condition further, for example, "What's wrong with your liver?", "In what way is your heart bad?", "How does this food affect you?", "What kind of ailment do you have?"
 - a It is permissible to copy the "Name of condition" entry to question 3a if that entry is clearer and more complete than the respondent's final answer to question 3a or he says he does not know what the doctor said it was.
 - b Question 3a should never be left blank or have an entry of "DK" when the "Neither" box has been marked in item A1.

3b

Question 3b. Cause of Condition

3b

Do not ask for Cancer	<input type="checkbox"/> On Card C (A2)
b. What was the cause of . . . ?	
<input type="checkbox"/> Accident or injury (A2)	

- 1 Mark the "On Card C" box if the answer to question 3a is a condition on Card C. For example, if the response to 3a is "Stomach ulcer," enter this in 3a and mark the "On Card C" box in 3b. However, do not mark this box if a Card C condition is given in response to 3b-3d. Complete the remaining parts of question 3 according to the instructions for each part.
- 2 Ask question 3b for all other conditions except cancer. Enter the respondent's answer verbatim.
- 3 If cause is reported in answer to question 3a, enter the cause in question 3b without asking the question. For example, record a reply of "Overwork caused a strain on my heart," as "Strained heart" in 3a, "Overwork" in 3b.
- 4 If the answer to 3b is an accident or injury, mark this box and go to A2. No written entry is required.

NOTE: Reactions to drugs - Illnesses or reactions resulting from absorption, swallowing, breathing, or injections of drugs are considered as injuries.

Question 3c, Kind of Trouble

If the entry in 3a or 3b includes the words:			
Ailment	Condition	Disorder	Trouble
Anemia	Cyst	Growth	Tumor
Asthma	Defect	Measles	Ulcer
Attack	Disease	Rupture	

c. What kind of . . . is it? Ask c:

- 1 Ask question 3c if any of the terms listed above this question appear in 3a or b and the required information has not been given previously. If the respondent's first answer indicates that he does not understand what information is desired, reask question 3c, emphasizing the word "kind." If the respondent does not know the specific kind, record what he does say about it or enter "DK." Do not record the entry in 3a or b, such as "heart trouble," or "nervous condition" only, but ask "What kind of heart trouble," "What kind of nervous condition" is it?"
- 2 It is not always clear from the entries in question 3a or 3b the exact kind of condition the person has. For example, "heart trouble," "kidney trouble" and "stomach disorder" are all general terms which give a specific part or organ of the body but not a specific kind of illness or trouble. Thus, heart trouble might be of several different kinds--angina, coronary, rheumatic, leakage, etc.; kidney trouble could mean kidney stones, nephritis, bladder infection, etc.; stomach trouble could refer to any number of digestive disturbances, such as ulcers, appendicitis, intestinal flu, etc. In question 3c, we ask the respondent to provide more specific information if he knows it.
- 3 One of the terms listed for which 3c (kind) is asked is "measles." This is necessary in order to distinguish between rubeola (regular measles) and rubella (German measles). The following terms are considered adequate to make this distinction:

Regular measles

Rubeola

"8 day" measles

"Old fashioned" measles

"Black" measles

"Hard" measles

"Bad" measles

"Red" measles

German measles

Rubella

"3 day" measles

3c

Kind of Trouble (Continued)

3c

If "measles" is given as the cause of a condition, for example, deafness due to measles, and the respondent does not know the kind, ask additional questions to determine if the measles were present during the mother's pregnancy, or if the person who has the condition is the one who had the measles.

- 4 For "cyst," "tumor," or other "growths," we want to determine the kind of cyst, etc. For example, was it cancerous (malignant), noncancerous (benign), sebaceous, neoplastic, etc. However, do not specifically ask if it was cancerous or noncancerous. For example, for "ovarian cyst" ask: "What kind of ovarian cyst is it?" (or "was it?" if the cyst has been removed). Also, ask kind for such entries as "skin growth," "flesh tumor" and "bone cyst" which describe only the site or part of body.

NOTE: If a specific name is given in 3a or 3b with one of the terms above 3c, such as sebaceous cyst, pernicious anemia, Meniere's disease, do not ask 3c. However, if a part of body is given, such as heart disease or cardiac condition, ask 3c.

3d

Question 3d, How Allergy or Stroke Affects Person

3d

For allergy or stroke, ask:
d. How does the allergy (stroke) affect him?

- 1 When "allergy" or "stroke" has been reported in question 3a, 3b, or 3c, ask question 3d inserting the appropriate word for the condition about which you are asking:

"How does the allergy affect him?"

or

"How does the stroke affect him?"

If the effect of the "allergy" or "stroke" has already been given in questions 3a-3c, question 3d need not be asked.

- 2 Enter the manifestations. For example, in the case of an allergy the person may have been affected with a swelling in some part of the body, a breaking out or itching, sneezing, eyes watering, nasal trouble, difficulty breathing, etc.
- 3 For a stroke, the manifestation might be "nervous tic on left side of face," "entire right leg and arm paralyzed," "speech difficulty," etc. Note that for a stroke, the information needed is how the person is affected now, not necessarily how he was affected at the time of the stroke. An entry giving only the part of body affected, for example, left side, is inadequate since we need to know how the person is affected.

3e

Question 3e. Part of Body Affected

3e

If in 3a-d there is an impairment or any of the following entries

Abscess	Damage	Paralysis	} Ask e.
Ache (except head or ear)	Growth	Rupture	
Bleeding	Hemorrhage	Sore	
Blood clot	Infection	Soreness	
Bail	Inflammation	Tumor	
Cancer	Neuralgia	Ulcer	
Cramps (except menstrual)	Neuritis	Varicose veins	
Cyst	Pain	Weak	
	Palsy	Weakness	

e. What part of the body is affected?

Show the following detail:

Head skull, scalp, face
 Back/spine/vertebra upper, middle, lower
 Ear or eye one or both
 Arm one or both, shoulder, upper elbow, lower elbow, hand
 Leg one or both, hip, upper part of lower leg, foot

1 Ask question 3e when any entry in questions 3a-d indicates either an impairment listed in paragraph 2 below, or is one of the conditions listed above this question. Phrase the question to obtain the needed information, for example, "Does your deafness affect one or both ears?" or "What part of the back is affected?"

2 Impairments for which question 3e must be asked:

Deafness, trouble hearing, or any other ear condition.

Blindness, trouble seeing, or any other eye condition.

Missing hand or arm - all or part of, foot or leg - all or part of.

Trouble, stiffness or any deformity of foot, leg, fingers, arm or back.

"Deformity" includes the terms contracture, curvature, atrophy, accessory or extra, short or shortness, crippled, shriveled, drawn up, twisted, withered, and scarred or scarring involving the leg, arm, or back.

3 For the impairments listed in paragraph 2 and conditions listed above question 3e which affect the "eye," "head," "back," "spine," "vertebra," "arm," or "leg," question 3 must show the specific detail that is required as given below question 3e.

a There are other detailed entries besides those listed which are acceptable, for example, "finger," "toe," "arch," "neck," etc. If an entire arm or leg is affected, state that this is so by entries, such as "one entire arm" or "one whole leg;" do not simply enter "arm" or "leg" only.

b If the part of the body affected is the eye or ear, or any part of the arm or leg, ask whether one or both are affected.

(A2)

Interviewer Check Item A2

(A2)

A2	Ask remaining questions as appropriate for the condition entered in:		
	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Item 1	3 <input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3b	5 <input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3d
	2 <input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3a	4 <input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3c	6 <input type="checkbox"/> Q. 3e

The purpose of item A2 is to indicate for which condition questions 4-16 should be asked. Mark one box in item A2 in the following order of preference.

- 1 If you marked "Accident or injury" or "On Card C" in item A1, mark the "Item 1" box.
- 2 For old conditions which the person no longer has, mark the box in A2 to indicate where the present effects were first reported on this Condition page. For example:

Question G and item 1 - Paralysis	Mark the
Question 3a - Stroke	"Item 1"
Question 3b - Hardening of the arteries	box
Question 3d - Paralysis of entire left arm	

Question 28 and item 1 - Foot trouble	Mark the
Question 3a - Club foot corrected as a child	"Item 1"
Question 3b - Birth injury	box

or

Question G and item 1 - Stroke	Mark the
Question 3a - Stroke	"Q. 3d"
Question 3b - High blood pressure	box
Question 3d - Lisps	

or

Item 1 - Infantile paralysis	Mark the
Question 3a - Infantile paralysis	"Q. 3e."
Question 3b - Polio	box
Question 3e - Paralysis of all of right arm and one drop foot	

(A2)

Interview Check Item (Continued)

(A2)

- 3 If the condition in item 1 has a letter as its source, and there are no present effects of an old condition, mark the item 1 box. For example:

Question U and item 1 - bow legs	Mark the
Question 3a - Rickets	"Item 1"
Question 3b - Diet deficiency	box

or

Question B and item 1 - infected gallbladder	Mark the
Question 3a - Gallstones	"Item 1"
Question 3b - DK	box

- 4 In all other cases, mark the "Q. 3a" box in A2. For example:

Question 17 and item 1 - Allergy	Mark the
Question 3a - Allergy	"Q. 3a"
Question 3b - Dust	box
Question 3d - Constant wheezing	

or

Question 28 and item 1 - Stammering	Mark the
Question 3a - Slow learner	"Q. 3a"
Question 3b - Premature birth	box

④

Question 4, Restricted Activity, Past Two Weeks

④

4. During the past 2 weeks, did his . . . cause him to cut down on the things he usually does?	1 Y	2 N (9)
---	-----	---------

- 1 In asking question 4, insert the name of the condition or the injury you are asking about. If the name of the condition is too long or difficult to pronounce, you may shorten or refer to it, as for example, your "hip condition" or "your husband's eye injury," etc, but this may be done only if the respondent clearly understands what condition or injury you are talking about.
- 2 Things He Usually Does - The things a person usually does are the person's "usual activities." For school children and most adults, "usual activities" would be going to school, working, or keeping house, etc. For children under school age, "usual activities" depend upon whatever the usual pattern is for the child which will, in turn, be affected by the age of the child, weather conditions, etc. For retired or elderly persons, "usual activities" might consist of almost no activity, but cutting down on even a small amount would mean that a person should answer "Yes" to the question.

On Sundays or holidays "usual activities" should be interpreted as the things a person usually does on those days, such as going to church, playing golf, visiting friends or relatives, staying at home and listening to the radio, reading, looking at television, etc.

- a The following examples illustrate cases of persons "Cutting down" on the things they usually do because of illness or injury; a person in school was kept away from school; a person who worked away from home was kept away from work; a farmer or a housewife was kept from caring for the farm or the home either completely or had to cut out all but the essential chores; an elderly person who normally takes a daily walk in the park was kept from doing so.
- b In borderline cases, where "usual activity" is difficult to determine, accept the respondent's view of what he himself considers to be his "usual activities." For example, a man with a heart condition may still consider his "usual activity" to be "working" even though the heart condition has prevented him from working for a year or more. You should accept his statement that "working" is his "usual activity." In another example, a man may say that a heart attack six months ago forced him to retire from his job or business, he does not expect to return to work, and considers his present "usual activities" to include only those associated with his retirement. The question, then, would refer to those activities.

5

Question 5, Days Cut Down in Past Two Weeks

5

5. During that period, how many days did he cut down for as much as a day?	<input type="text"/> Days <input type="checkbox"/> None (0)
--	--

1 Enter the total number of different days during last week and/or the week before on which the condition caused the person to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day. The days need not be consecutive.

2 Cut Down as Much as a Day - A day of restricted activity (cut down) is a day when a person cuts down on his usual activities for that entire day because of his illness or injury. "Usual activities" for any day mean the things that the person would usually do on that day.

a Restricted activity does not imply complete inactivity but it does imply the minimum of the things a person usually does. A special nap for an hour after lunch does not constitute cutting down on usual activities for as much as a day, nor does the elimination of a heavy chore, such as cleaning ashes out of the furnace or hanging out the wash. All or most of a person's usual activities for the day must have been restricted for the person to have a cut down day.

b The following are some examples of a person having to cut down on the things he usually does for as much as a day:

A housewife who expected to clean house after doing the breakfast dishes, then work in the garden and go shopping in the afternoon was forced to rest because of a severe headache, doing nothing after the breakfast dishes until she prepared the evening meal.

A young boy who usually played outside most of the day was confined to the house because of a severe cold.

A garage owner whose usual activities included mechanical and other heavy work was forced to stay in his office directing others, talking to customers, etc., because of his heart condition.

3 The reference period for question 5 includes Saturdays and Sundays. ALL the days of the week are of equal importance in this question, even though the types of "cut down" activities might not be the same on weekends as on regular weekdays. If necessary, mention this to the respondent. To illustrate this concept, consider the following example:

A man who planned a fishing trip for Saturday and Sunday had to stay home from work Friday and was also too ill to go fishing both on Saturday and Sunday because of a flare-up of his back trouble. If you find that this was the only time during the past two weeks in which he was bothered by back trouble, the correct entry for question 5 would be "3".

HIS-100
(1978)

6

Question 6, Bed Days in Past Two Weeks

6

6. During that 2-week period, how many days did his . . . keep him in bed all or most of the day?	____ Days oo <input type="checkbox"/> None
---	---

- 1 Day in Bed - Any day on which the person was kept in bed for all or most of the day because of an illness or injury. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the daylight hours (or of the hours that the person is usually awake, if he works a night shift). Taking a nap on "general principles" should not be counted as a day in bed. Also, count all days as a patient in a hospital, sanitarium or nursing home for this condition as bed days whether or not the patient was actually lying in bed at the hospital, sanitarium or nursing home. Exclude hospital days for a normal newborn, unless the baby had some complication or illness.
- 2 Bed - Anything used for sleeping, including sofa, cot or mattress. If a person was on the sofa watching TV because he was too ill to get around, count this as a bed day. The important distinction here is whether the person was ill enough that he had to be in bed for all or most of the day.

7

Question 7, Days Lost From Work for Persons
17 Years of Age or Older

7

Ask if 17+ years.	_____ Days (9)
7. How many days did his . . . keep him from work during that 2-week period? (For females): not counting work around the house?	oo None (9)

- 1 Mark the "None" box if no days were lost from work or if the person doesn't work. If you learn that the person would not have been working during the past two weeks, whether he had been sick or well, mark the "None" box without asking the question for any other conditions for which question 7 requires an entry.
- 2 Work - Paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary, commission or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters, or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also, include work in the person's own business, professional practice or farm and work without pay in a business or farm run by a related household member.

Exclude work around the house, volunteer unpaid work, such as for church, Red Cross, charity, and service in the Armed Forces.
- 3 Work-Loss Day - Any scheduled work day in which the person stayed home from work for all or most of the day because of the condition for which you are completing this page. All or most of the day is defined as more than half of the hours usually spent at work.
- 4 Disregard School Days - If a person 17 years of age or over goes to school instead of, or in addition to, working, record only the days lost from work (disregarding any days lost from school). Include any days lost from school for persons 17 and over in days of restricted activity (question 5).

8

Question 8, Days Lost From School for Persons 6-16 Years

8

Ask if 6-16 years: 8. How many days did his . . . keep him from school during that 2-week period?	____ Days or <input type="checkbox"/> None
---	---

- 1 If the person is between the ages of 6-16 and no days were lost from school, or he does not attend school, mark the "None" box. If you learn that the person would not have been going to school during that period whether he had been sick or well, mark the "None" box without asking the question for any other conditions for which question 8 requires an entry.
- 2 School-Loss Day - Any scheduled school day when more than half of the day was lost because of this condition. For example, if the person did not go to school until after lunch, count this as a day lost from school.

If the person's regular school day is less than a whole day and that amount of time or most of it was lost from school on account of illness, count it as a day lost from school.
- 3 School Vacation - Ask this question even during the periods of the year which might normally be considered vacation periods, since school vacation periods are not all the same and some persons attend summer sessions.
- 4 Disregard Work Days - If a person 6-16 years of age works instead of, or in addition to, going to school, record only the days lost from school (disregarding any days lost from work). Any days lost from work for persons 6-16 years of age should be included in days of restricted activity (Question 5).

Question 9, Onset of Condition

9. When did -- first notice his ...?	
1 <input type="checkbox"/> Last week	4 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 weeks-3 months
2 <input type="checkbox"/> Week before	5 <input type="checkbox"/> Over 3-12 months
3 <input type="checkbox"/> Past 2 weeks-DK which	6 <input type="checkbox"/> More than 12 months ago
(Was it during the past 12 months or before that time?)	
(Was it during the past 3 months or before that time?)	
(Was it during the past 2 weeks or before that time?)	

- 1 First Noticed - When a condition first began to give any trouble or show any symptoms. If the respondent seems uncertain of the date of onset, ask the first probe, "Was it during the past 12 months or before that time?" Ask the additional probe questions as necessary in order to mark the appropriate box. If the answer has been given in response to a previous question, mark the appropriate box without asking question 9.
- a For the after effect of an old injury (one which happened more than three months ago), it is the day when the present ill-effects were first noticed.
- b For a condition that has continued for a long time, as might be the case with deafness, mental retardation, or stomach ulcer, the date might be many years ago. Some conditions, which a person has all of the time, manifest themselves in more serious ways from time to time. It is the date the trouble was first noticed, not the date of the most recent attack or flare-up.
- c For conditions which usually last a short time, such as colds, virus, flu, etc., but occur frequently, it is the date of the most recent attack.

3 Reference Period

Past 2 Weeks - The 2 weeks ending the Sunday night before the interview.

Past 3 Months - The 3 months ending the Sunday night before the interview beginning with that Sunday's date 3 months earlier.

Past 12 Months - The 12 months ending the Sunday night before the interview and beginning with that Sunday's date a year earlier.

(A3)

Interviewer Check Item A3

(A3)

A3	<input type="checkbox"/> 1 Not an eye cond. (AA)	<input type="checkbox"/> 3 First eye cond. (6+ yrs.) (10)
	<input type="checkbox"/> 2 First eye cond. (under 6) (AA)	<input type="checkbox"/> 4 Not first eye cond. (AA)

- 1 There must be an entry in one of the four boxes in item A3 for each completed Condition page. An eye condition is any condition concerning the eyes or vision, such as watery or weak eyes (except as effects of allergy), conjunctivitis, cataracts, glaucoma, etc. Ask the respondent if the condition is an eye condition if you do not know or are not sure.
 - a "Not an eye cond." - Mark this box for each condition which is not an eye condition.
 - b "First eye condition (under 6)" - Mark this box if the person is under six years old and this is the first or only eye condition or vision problem he has.
 - c "First eye cond. (6+ yrs.)" - Mark this box if this is the first or only eye condition or vision problem the person has and he is six years old or over.
 - d "Not first eye cond." - Mark this box if the condition on this Condition page is an eye condition but is not the first eye condition for this person.
- 2 Mark A3 based on your entry in A2. For example, item 1 and 3a - headaches, 3b - weak eyes, mark A3 "Not an eye cond." because you are filling this page for headaches. (A2 is marked Q. 3a.)

10

Question 10, Vision Question

10

10. Can — see well enough to read ordinary newspaper print			
WITH GLASSES with his	{ left	eye? . . .	Y 2 N
	{ right	eye? . . .	Y 2 N

- 1 If you marked "First eye cond. (6+ yrs.)" in A3, ask question 10. Be sure to read the statement clearly so that the respondent hears the phrase "with glasses" since many people who have serious eye trouble are not limited when they are wearing their glasses, even though they may be limited without them. If the person uses glasses, the answers to question 10 should be in terms of what the person can read when he is using his glasses.
- 2 Ask question 10 separately for each eye. When asking this question first use "left" and circle "Y" or "N" according to the response. Then reask question 10 using "right" and circle the appropriate letter.
- 3 If the person cannot read (is illiterate), the question refers to whether he can see with either eye well enough to read if he knew how.

HIS-100
(1978)

AA

Item AA, When to Complete Questions 11-16

AA

AA	<p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> Missing extremity (A4)</p> <p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> Condition in C2 does not have a letter as source (A4)</p> <p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> Condition in C2 has a letter as source, Doctor seen (11)</p> <p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> Condition in C2 has a letter as source, Doctor not seen (15)</p>
----	--

- 1 Mark one of the boxes in item AA to indicate if the condition is a missing extremity or has a letter as source (from the condition list) in C2.
- 2 Consider as missing extremities all or part of a missing finger, hand, arm, toe, foot, or leg.
- 3 If the condition has a letter as source, refer to question 2 of this Condition page to see if a doctor was seen and mark the corresponding box.
 - a If the entry in question 2 is "Never," DK if doctor seen," or if the only time a doctor was seen was during interview week, consider this as "Doctor not seen."
 - b If the doctor was seen for this condition, continue with questions 11-16, as appropriate. These questions obtain information about what people who have certain conditions do or take for them and the extent to which they are bothered by these conditions.

NOTE: If the condition is a "Missing extremity," mark this box and go to A4 even if the condition has a letter as source.

11

Question 11, Now Take Any Medicine or Treatment

11

11a. Does -- NOW take any medicine or treatment for his . . . ?	1 Y
	2 N (12)

b. Was any of this medicine or treatment recommended by a doctor?	1 Y
	2 N

- 1 In 11a the medicine or treatment may be on a regular basis, such as medication for glaucoma or on an irregular basis when the medicine or treatment is taken whenever the person experiences an attack of the condition, such as aspirin for repeated back trouble.
- 2 In 11b the medicine does not have to be prescription medicine but anything the doctor advised or recommended. This is also true for the treatment of a condition, for example, wearing a leg brace for palsy.

12 - 13

Questions 12 and 13

Ever Had Surgery/Hospitalization for Condition

12 - 13

12. Has he ever had surgery for this condition?	1 Y
	2 N

13. Was he ever hospitalized for this condition?	1 Y
	2 N

- 1 If the reported condition was "cataract" and a question arises, ask the question, "Have you ever had surgery for this cataract?" We are interested in this particular cataract not any the respondent may have had in the past which was subsequently cured.
- 2 The definition for "this condition" in question 13 is the same as in question 12.

14

Question 14.

14

Number of Doctor Visits During the Past 12 Months

14. During the past 12 months, about how many times has
-- seen or talked to a doctor about his . . . ? ___ Times
(Do not count visits while a patient in a hospital.) 000 None

In question 14, include the phrase within the parentheses if a hospitalization was recorded in C1 for the person for whom this Condition page is being filled. Ask the question even if the answer to question 2, "When last saw or talked to doctor?", is more than a year ago. The reason for this is that question 2 is asked about the entry in item 1 (from item C2), while question 14 may be asked about the entry in item 1 or question 3. Make no change in question 2 because of the answer to question 14.

15

Question 15, Bed/Work Loss Days During Past 12 Months

15

15a. About how many days during the past 12 months has
this condition kept him in bed all or most of the day? ___ Days
000 None

Ask if 17+ years:

b. About how many days during the past 12 months has
this condition kept him from work? ___ Days
For females: Not counting work around the house? 000 None

1 Include days in the hospital during the past 12 months for this condition as bed days.

The number of days in bed in question 15a, cannot be less than the number in question 6, since "the past two weeks" is part of the "past 12 months." When inconsistencies occur, resolve the differences with the respondent.

2 In question 15b, record the number of workloss days during the past 12 months for persons 17+ for this condition. The entry for this question cannot be less than the entry in question 7. If this situation occurs, resolve the differences with the respondent as in question 15a.

Question 16, Condition Bothers

16

16

16a. How often does his . . . bother him - all of the time, often, once in a while, or never?

1 All the time 2 Often 3 Once in a while

4 Never (16c) 5 Other - Specify _____

b. When it does bother him, is he bothered a great deal, some, or very little?

1 Great deal 2 Some 3 Very little

4 Other - Specify _____

All the time in 16a OR condition list 4 asked (A4)

c. Does -- still have this condition?

1 Y (A4) 2 N

d. Is this condition completely cured or is it under control?

1 Cured 2 Under control (A4)

3 Other - Specify _____ (A4)

e. About how long did -- have this condition before it was cured?

1 Less than one month _____ Months _____ Years

In this question we are interested in the respondent's evaluation of the extent to which a condition troubles him. Therefore, there is no definition for the term "bother"; it is to be defined by the respondent.

- 1 Mark the appropriate box in 16a depending on the answer you receive. If the answer given is not the same as one of the categories included in the question, reask the question. If the answer still is not the same as one of the listed categories, mark the "Other" box and record the respondent's answer verbatim. If the answer given indicates that the person is not bothered at all by the condition, mark the "Never" box.
- 2 Ask question 16b to determine to what extent he is bothered. Follow the same procedures as given for question 16a.
- 3 If you marked "All the time in 16a," or if you asked Condition list 4 (refer to item L) mark the box above 16c and go to A4. Otherwise, ask 16c and circle the appropriate letter.
- 4 Ask question 16d to determine whether the condition is cured or is under control. "Under control" refers to situations in which persons, by following a certain diet, taking medicine, and so forth, no longer have the symptoms of the condition. However, if they were to stop doing these things, the symptoms might recur.
- 5 Ask question 16e to determine how long the person had the condition before it was cured. If a question is raised, the time period to be reported is from the time the person first noticed something was wrong until the condition was considered "Cured."

(A4)

Interviewer Check Item A4

(A4)

A4	<input type="checkbox"/> Accident or injury <input type="checkbox"/> Other (NC)
----	---

Complete item A4 for each condition. Carry all injuries through the accident questions whether or not they were associated with an accident.

(17)

Question 17, When Did the Accident (or Injury) Occur

(17)

17a. Did the accident happen during the past 2 years or before that time?	
<input type="checkbox"/> During the past 2 years	<input type="checkbox"/> Before 2 years (18a)

b. When did the accident happen?	
<input type="checkbox"/> Last week	<input type="checkbox"/> Over 3-12 months
<input type="checkbox"/> Week before	<input type="checkbox"/> 1-2 years
<input type="checkbox"/> 2 weeks-3 months	

- 1 Ask question 17a to determine whether the accident (or injury) occurred "During the past 2 years" or "Before 2 years."
- 2 Ask question 17b only if the accident or injury occurred during the past two years. If the accident was exactly three months ago (three months prior to last Sunday's date), mark the "2 weeks-3 months" box. If the accident occurred exactly 12 months ago, mark the "Over 3-12 months" box.

Question 18, Effects of Accident or Injury

18a. At the time of the accident what part of the body was hurt?
 What kind of injury was it? Anything else?

Part(s) of body	Kind of injury

If accident happened more than 3 months ago, ask:
 b. What part of the body is affected now?
 How is his -- affected? Is he affected in any other way?

Part(s) of body	Present effects

1 Ask the first part of question 18 and record in the space provided the "part(s) of body" which the respondent mentions. Next ask, "What kind of injury was it?" and record in the answer space the kind of injury for each part of body. Ask "Anything else?" and record any other "part(s) of body" and "kind of injury" for any other injuries mentioned.

2 General, vague answers, such as "hit," "blood clot," "bumped," "mashed," etc., are not acceptable entries for the kind of injury since they do not provide sufficient information on the nature of the injury. The specific part of body which was injured should be recorded in the same detail as shown below question 3e. The following are some examples of adequate entries for question 18a:

<u>Adequate</u>		<u>Inadequate</u>	
<u>Part(s) of body</u>	<u>Kind of injury</u>	<u>Part(s) of body</u>	<u>Kind of injury</u>
One Knee	Fractured	Arm	Crushed
Both Upper legs	Bruised	Leg	Mashed
One Eye	Bruised	Spine	Hit with ball
1/ Head	Concussion	Head	Injured
One Hand	Cut	Arm	Caught in washing machine
Lower back	Dislocated	Back	Hurt

1/ Part of head is not required for concussion.

18

Effects of Accident or Injury (Continued)

18

- 3 For accidents or injuries which happened more than three months ago, we need to know how the injury affects the person now. This information is obtained by asking question 18b. Record the part of body in the same detail and in the same manner as for question 18a. Record only the part of body which presently manifests any ill-effects of the old injury. See page D4-7, par. 4 for multiple present effects instructions.
- a If the present effects have been reported earlier in question 3, question 18b need not be asked again but the entries must be transcribed to 18b from question 3. For example, if the entry in 3a is "missing hand" and the "Accident or injury" box is marked in 3b, the information must be transferred to 18b as follows: "One hand" in the part of body space and "missing" in the space for present effects. These entries can be made without acutally asking the first part of question 18b. However, you must ask, "Is he affected in any other way?"
- b When the answer to 18b is vague or expressed only in terms of some limitation, enter the limitation but also transcribe the entry from question 3, if that represents a more adequate description of the present effects. For example, in question 3, a person has a stiff elbow caused by an accident. In answer to 18b, the respondent says, "He can't bend his arm." In this case, enter "can't bend arm" on the first line and the question 3 entry, that is, "stiff elbow" on the second line. In cases where the question 3 answer does not clarify the entry, reask question 18b to determine how the person is affected.
- c It is not necessary that the person be suffering from ill-effects this instant to report them in 18b. If the person is subject to periodic recurring attacks of a condition caused by an old accident or injury, record these effects.
- d If a person reports ill-effects of an old injury, record them even though they may not "bother" him within the liberal meaning of the word. For example, a person may report a stiff elbow caused by an old football injury. He may say he had gotten used to it and it never bothers him. "Stiff elbow" would be considered the present ill-effects of the old injury.
- e For an injury which happened earlier but has not yet healed, enter the original injury in question 18b as the "Present effects." For example, in the case of a fractured hip occurring four months before the interview, the entry "fractured hip" is appropriate in question 18b if the fracture has not yet healed. For these cases, indicate that the injury has not yet healed.

NOTE: "Slipped disc," "slipped vertebrae," "dislocated disc," or "ruptured disc" are acceptable "present effects."

Question 19, Where Did the Accident Happen

19. Where did the accident happen?	
1	<input type="checkbox"/> At home (inside house)
2	<input type="checkbox"/> At home (adjacent premises)
3	<input type="checkbox"/> Street and highway (includes roadway and public sidewalk)
4	<input type="checkbox"/> Farm
5	<input type="checkbox"/> Industrial place (includes premises)
6	<input type="checkbox"/> School (includes premises)
7	<input type="checkbox"/> Place of recreation and sports, except at school
8	<input type="checkbox"/> Other - Specify <i>✓</i>

- 1 Home - "Home" as used here includes not only the person's own home but also any other home, vacant or occupied, in which he might have been when he was injured, as well as homes being remodeled or undergoing repair. Do not consider an accident occurring at a house under construction as occurring at home, but mark the box "Industrial place" for these.
- a At Home (Inside House) - The accident occurred while the person was inside the house, in any room or porch but not an inside garage. Consider porches, or steps leading directly to porches or entrances, as "inside the house." Falling out of a window or falling off a roof or porch also are included as inside the house. Also include in this category injuries happening within motel or hotel rooms. The lobby, corridors and other public places within the motel or hotel premises are not regarded as "home." Mark them as "Other," and specify.
- b At Home (Adjacent Premises) - The accident occurred in the yard, the driveway, patios, gardens or walks to the house or a garage. On a farm, the adjacent premises include the home premises or garage, but not the barns or other buildings (unless used as a garage) or the land under cultivation.
- 2 Street and Highway - "Street and highway" means the entire width between property lines of which any part is open for use of the public as a matter of right or custom. This includes more than just the traveled part of the road. "Street and highway" includes the whole right-of-way. Public sidewalks are part of the street but private driveways, private lanes, private alleys, and private sidewalks are not considered part of the street.
- 3 Farm - The accident occurred in a farm building or on land under cultivation but not in the farm home or premises. "Farm" includes a ranch, as used here.

19 Where Did the Accident Happen (Continued)

19

- Industrial Place - The accident occurred in industrial places, such as a factory building, a railway yard, a warehouse, a workshop, a loading platform of a factory or store, etc. Include construction projects (houses, buildings, bridges, new roads, etc.) as well as buildings undergoing remodeling. Do not classify private homes undergoing remodeling as industrial places, but classify them as a "home." Other examples of "industrial places" are logging camps, shipping piers, oil fields, shipyards, sand and gravel pits, canneries, and auto repair garages.
- 5 School - The accident occurred either in the school buildings or on the premises (campus). Include all types of schools, elementary, high schools, colleges, business schools, etc.
- 6 Place of Recreation and Sports - The accident occurred in places designed for sports and recreation, such as a bowling alley, amusement park, baseball field, dance hall, lake, mountain or beach resort and stadium. Exclude places of recreation and sports located on the premises of an industrial place or school, and places not designed for recreation or sports, such as a hill used for sliding or a river used for boating or swimming.
- 7 Other - The specific types of places listed above do not describe where the accident happened. If "Other" is marked, specify the exact type of place, such as grocery store, restaurant, office building, church, etc. General entries, such as "Armed Forces" are not satisfactory, since a person can be in the Armed Forces and have an accident in any one of several kinds of places.

20

Question 20, At Work When Accident Happened

20

20. Was -- at work at his job or business when the accident happened?	
1 Y	3 <input type="checkbox"/> While in Armed Services
2 N	4 <input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 at time of accident

- 1 Consider an injury as occurring "at work" if the person was on duty at the time of the accident. Thus, a salesman traveling from town to town would be "at work" if an injury occurred en route between towns, but a person on his way to an office job who had an accident en route would not be considered as having been injured "at work."
- 2 Mark "While in Armed Services" for any injury or accident which occurred while the person was in the Armed Service, regardless of whether he was on duty at the time it occurred. For example, mark the box "While in Armed Services" for a sailor who was away from his ship when he slipped, fell on the ice and broke his leg on a downtown street.

21

Question 21, Motor Vehicle Involved

21

21a. Was a car, truck, bus, or other motor vehicle involved in the accident in any way?	1 Y	2 N (NC)

b. Was more than one vehicle involved?	Y	N

c. Was it (either one) moving at the time?	1 Y	2 N

Ask question 21 to determine if any motor vehicles were involved in the accident and in what way they were involved.

- 1 Motor Vehicle - A power operated vehicle, not on rails, for transporting persons or property, intended for use on a land highway, either public or private; or a self-propelled nonhighway vehicle, such as construction equipment, tractor, farm machinery, or tank when operating on a highway. Attached objects, such as a sled, coaster, or trailer are considered as part of the motor vehicle.
- 2 Normotor vehicles - Recreation vehicles, such as mini-bikes, go-carts, or snowmobiles are not usually included in the definition of motor vehicles. The only time they are classified as motor vehicles is when they are in operation on a land highway. Do not consider certain normotor vehicles, such as trains, streetcars, or bicycles as motor vehicles.
- 3 Circle "Y" in question 21a for each accident involving a motor vehicle in any way at all, regardless of whether the person was in the vehicle and regardless of whether the vehicle was moving at the time of the accident. For example, a pedestrian hit by a car, a person on a bicycle hurt by running into a parked car, a person hurt while repairing a car. Report these as accidents involving a motor vehicle as well as the case of a person hurt in a collision or some other type of accident while riding in a motor vehicle.
- 4 In question 21b, be careful that only motor vehicles are included. Exclude normotor vehicles.
- 5 Motor Vehicle, Moving - If there is a question, consider the motor vehicle as moving if the wheels were moving (this includes skidding) or if the vehicle had come to a stop just an instant before the accident occurred.
 - a If only one motor vehicle was involved ("No" in question 21b), ask question 21c without the parenthetical phrase.
 - b If a motor vehicle and a normotor vehicle were involved, for example, a bus and train collision, substitute "motor vehicle" or "bus" for "it" to be sure the respondent understands that question 21c refers to the motor vehicle and not to the other vehicle.

HIS-100
(1978)

CHAPTER 5. DOCTOR VISITS PAGES

A General Procedure

The Two-Week Doctor Visits page consists of two facing pages containing columns for four doctor visits. Complete a separate column for each doctor visit or call recorded in the "DV" box in item C1. If there are more than four two-week doctor visits reported for a family, use additional questionnaires. Begin with the first person reporting doctor visits, complete a column for each of his doctor visits, and continue in the same manner for each succeeding person.

B Two or More Doctors Seen on Same Visit - If two or more doctors were seen on the same visit, fill a doctor visit column for each doctor seen and indicate this in a footnote. Situations of this kind generally occur when a person visits a clinic where he sees doctors with different specialties; for example, a dermatologist in one office and an internist in another office. It might also occur when a person visits his family doctor who, in the course of the same visit, calls in a specialist to examine or treat the person.

C Visit to Doctor and Laboratory on Same Visit - The previous rule also applies to a person who visits a doctor and the doctor immediately sends him to a neighboring laboratory for tests, X-rays, and so forth. Consider this a separate visit if the laboratory is not a part of the doctor's office or clinic and renders a separate bill for its services.

D Consistency Check - You may find it helpful to make a check mark to the right of the number of visits in item C1 as you complete each doctor visits column, for example 2✓. This indicates that two columns have been completed for that person's doctor visits. Before leaving the Two-Week Doctor Visits pages, count the number of completed doctor visit columns for each person (excluding any that you have deleted). If this number differs from the number of visits in item C1, make any corrections necessary to make the entries consistent as follows:

Add to C1 any additional visits first reported in question 2b on the Doctor Visits page.

or

Subtract from item C1 any that you have deleted because they were outside the two-week reference period or "mass visits."

E Mass Visits - These are visits for shots or examinations (such as chest X-rays) administered on a mass basis. Thus, if the person went to a clinic, a mobile unit or some similar place to receive an immunization, a single chest X-ray or a certain diagnostic procedure which was being administered identically to all persons who were at the place for this purpose, this would not be counted as a visit.

NOTE: However, physicals for athletes or the armed services are not mass visits, and are included in the doctor visits questions.

If when filling a doctor visit column, a "mass visit" is discovered, delete it by "X"-ing out the entire column and writing "mass visit" in the column. Probe to determine if there were any other two-week visits and if so, enter the person number, the date in question 2, complete a column and correct the entry in item C1, if necessary. If there were no other doctor visits, enter "mass visit" and correct the entry in item C1, if necessary.

F Special Note on Frequent Doctor Visits for the Same Person - Sometimes a person sees or talks to a doctor several times during the reference period. If the respondent cannot remember or does not know the dates of each different visit, ask him to estimate, using the calendar when needed. Enter all available information in a separate column for each estimated visit.

HIS-100
(1978)

①

Item 1, Person Number

①

1.	Person number _____
----	---------------------

Enter the person number for whom the "visit" information is being obtained. This entry identifies the person who has made the visit and is essential for tabulation purposes. If it is incorrect, all of the "visit" information will be attributed to the wrong person.

Question 2, Date of Visit

Earlier, you told me that -- had seen or talked to a doctor during the past 2 weeks.	2a.	. OR { 7777 <input type="checkbox"/> Last week 8888 <input type="checkbox"/> Week before
2a. On what (other) dates during that 2-week period did -- visit or talk to a doctor?		Month Date -----
b. Were there any other doctor visits for him during that period?	b.	Y (Reask 2a and b) N (ASK 3-8 for each visit)

- 1 Read the introductory statement above question 2a only once for each family before asking question 2a for the first doctor visit. Insert for the dashes the names of all family members for whom you have recorded doctor visits in the "DV" box in C1.

- 2 Use question 2a to record the date of each doctor visit. Ask the question as worded, unless you know the "visit" you are asking about is a telephone call, in which case say, "On what date during that two-week period did -- talk to a doctor?" If more than one visit is reported for a person, it is desirable (but not mandatory) to have the most recent visit listed first.
 - a An estimate of the exact date of the month is acceptable, but use the two-week calendar to help the respondent recall the exact date as closely as possible. If the exact date cannot be determined, determine the week. In this case, mark the "Last week" or the "Week before" box.
 - b If in recording the date of the visit, you learn that the visit actually took place outside the reference period (either before the two-week dates or during interview week), enter the date in 2a but delete this doctor visit by X-ing out the remainder of the column and correct item C1.

- 3 Question 2b serves to remind the respondent of any additional visits that he may have forgotten to report earlier. Enter the dates of all visits reported in C1 for this person, then ask the question.
 - a If any additional two-week visits are reported, circle "Y" in the last column for this person and reask question 2a, using the word "other". Record the column number of this person and the date(s) for the additional visit(s) in question 2a of the next column(s) and correct the entry in C1 for the person.
 - b Note that question 2b must always have a "No" entry in a person's last doctor visit column since a "Yes" entry in question 2b requires the filling of another column which in turn requires the reasking of question 2b. If the answer to that question is "Yes," still another doctor visit column must be filled. If the answer is "No," that is the last column for the person.

3

Question 3, Place of Visit

3

<p>3. Where did he see the doctor on the <u>(date)</u> at a clinic, hospital, doctor's office, or some other place?</p> <p>If Hospital: Was it the outpatient clinic or the emergency room?</p> <p>If Clinic: Was it a hospital outpatient clinic, a company clinic, or some other kind of clinic?</p>	<p>3. <input type="checkbox"/> 0 While inpatient in hospital (Next DV) <input type="checkbox"/> 1 Doctor's office (group practice or doctor's clinic) <input type="checkbox"/> 2 Telephone <input type="checkbox"/> 3 Hospital Outpatient Clinic <input type="checkbox"/> 4 Home <input type="checkbox"/> 5 Hospital Emergency Room <input type="checkbox"/> 6 Company or Industry Clinic <input type="checkbox"/> 7 Other (Specify) <u>7</u></p>
--	---

Ask question 3, inserting the date of the visit. If the response to this question is "Hospital" or "Clinic," ask the appropriate probe question to determine if this was the outpatient clinic, emergency room, company clinic, etc. Mark the box which indicates the kind of place (not the name of the place) in accordance with the following definitions:

- 1 While Inpatient in Hospital - Any doctor's visit which occurred while the person was in a hospital overnight or longer.
- 2 Doctor's Office - The office of a doctor in private practice. This may be an office in the doctor's home, an individual office in an office building or a suite of offices occupied by several doctors. This category also includes "doctor's clinic," meaning the offices of a group of doctors.
- 3 Telephone - A telephone call made to, or from a doctor or doctor's office which relates to treatment or advice given by a doctor directly or transmitted through a nurse.
- 4 Hospital Outpatient Clinic - A unit of a hospital where persons may go for medical care without being admitted as an inpatient.
- 5 Home - Any place the person was staying at the time of the doctor's visit. It may be his own home, the home of a friend, a hotel room, etc.
- 6 Hospital Emergency Room - A unit of a hospital where persons may receive medical care, usually of an urgent nature, without or before being admitted as an inpatient. However, if the person is admitted to the hospital as a result of this visit, footnote the situation and do not ask the remaining questions for this visit. Make any necessary corrections to item Cl.
- 7 Company or Industry Clinic - A company or plant doctor's office or clinic which is operated solely for the employees of that company or industry.
- 8 Other (Dispensaries, Community Health Centers, Etc.) - Specify or give the best description of the place which you can obtain.

4

Question 4, Kind of Doctor

4

4. Is the doctor a general practitioner or a specialist?	4. 01 <input type="checkbox"/> General practitioner <input type="checkbox"/> Specialist - What kind of specialist is he? \rightarrow
--	---

- 1 If the respondent says the doctor is a specialist, mark the "Specialist" box and ask the follow-up question. Record the kind of specialist named by the respondent. If the respondent does not know the term for the specialist, but only knows what he specializes in, enter that information in the space provided, for example, heart ailments, X-ray doctor, etc.
 - a A general practitioner is a medical doctor who does not limit his practice to a specialty.
 - b A specialist is a medical doctor who limits his practice to certain groups of people (children, women, etc.), certain conditions (diabetes, arthritis, etc.), certain parts of the body (eyes, ears, nose and throat, etc.) or special procedures (anesthesia, radiology, etc.).
 - c Do not make double entries, for example, GP and internist, without some further explanation of the entry. If the respondent cannot specifically say whether the doctor is a GP or an internist, your entry should reflect this fact such as "GP or internist—DK which."
 - d If the respondent does not know whether or not the person rendering the service for this visit is a doctor, enter "DK if Dr." Also enter any other information available which describes the person providing the service, such as "lab technician," or "X-ray technician."
- 2 If you learn that the doctor is not a medical doctor at all, it is particularly important that this fact be noted. In this case, enter "Not an MD" and also describe what he does, for example, chiropractor, oral surgeon, dentist. Do not delete these kinds of doctor visits from the Doctor Visits page even though they do not fit the definition of a medical doctor described earlier.

NOTE: In this question we are interested in the specialty of the doctor even though the doctor himself was not seen.

HIS-100
(1978)

5

Question 5, Doctor Seen or Talked to

5

5. During this visit (call) did -- actually see (talk to) the doctor?	5.	1 Y	2 N
---	----	-----	-----

This question determines whether the doctor was actually seen or talked to during this visit. If the person only saw or talked to a nurse in the doctor's office, circle "N." If "Telephone" is marked in question 3, use the phrases "call" and "talk to" when asking question 5.

6

Question 6, Purpose of Visit

6

<p>6a. Why did he visit (call) the doctor on _____ (date) _____ ?</p> <p>Write in reason _____</p> <p>Mark appropriate box(es)</p> <hr/> <p>b. Was this for any specific condition?</p> <p>Mark box or ask: _____</p> <hr/> <p>c. For what condition did -- visit (call) the doctor on _____ (date) _____ ?</p>	<p>6a.</p> <p>1 <input type="checkbox"/> Diag. or treatment (6c)</p> <p>3 <input type="checkbox"/> General checkup (6b)</p> <p>2 <input type="checkbox"/> Pre or Postnatal care</p> <p>4 <input type="checkbox"/> Eye exam. (glasses)</p> <p>5 <input type="checkbox"/> Immunization</p> <p>6 <input type="checkbox"/> Other</p> <p style="text-align: right;">} (7)</p> <hr/> <p>b. Y (Enter condition in 6a and change to "Diag. or treatment") N (7)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Condition reported in 6a</p> <hr/> <p>c.</p>
---	--

- 1 Ask question 6a, inserting the date the visit was made. Then write in the response verbatim and mark one or more of the boxes provided which best describes the answer given.

a Diagnosis or Treatment

- 1) An examination or test to diagnose an illness, regardless of whether the examination or tests resulted in a diagnosis.

or

- 2) Treatment or advice given by the doctor or under the doctor's supervision. Include X-rays either for diagnostic purposes or treatment in this class.

Mark this box when the visit is for the detection of a single condition by use of a glaucoma test, diabetes test, T.B. test, or a pap smear for cancer. Do not enter the condition in 6c or C2 unless it was discovered on this visit. Also mark this box if the reason for the visit is to receive vitamin or hormone shots.

If the visit is for a specific condition and while there the person is given a general checkup, mark both the "Diag. or treatment" and the "General checkup" boxes.

- b General Checkup - A visit to a doctor for the purpose of determining the general state of the person's health. This category includes checkups for specific purposes, such as physical examinations required to obtain employment, for college entrance, to obtain insurance, periodic (yearly) general checkups, visits to the well-baby clinic, etc.

However, do not classify a visit to a doctor for a checkup or examination for a specific condition, such as when a person goes at regular intervals for a checkup for T.B. or a heart condition, as "General checkup." Classify this as "Diag. or treatment."

⑥ Purpose of Visit (Continued)

⑥

- c Pre or Postnatal Care - Consultation concerning the care of the mother, not the baby. Include visits by the mother to the doctor for checkups during the pregnancy and also during the period just after delivery. Exclude consultation for illnesses not related to pregnancy or delivery.
- d Eye Examination - An examination of the eyes for the purpose of establishing a need for eyeglasses or for a change in the type of eyeglasses being worn. Any other eye examination or treatment of an eye condition is classified as "Diag. or treatment."
- e Immunization or Vaccination - Shots or injections to prevent particular diseases.
- f Other - Used to record medical services received other than those listed or those which you do not know how to classify. Record the type of service as reported by the respondent. If necessary, use the footnote space for continuing the description of the medical service received.

- 2 Sometimes more than one service is provided during the same visit; if this is discovered, record all services received during one visit. However, do not probe for any additional services but enter them only if they are voluntarily reported together, for example, the respondent says, "I had a prenatal checkup; the doctor also gave me heat treatment for a slipped disc." In this case, mark both "Pre or Postnatal care" and "Diag or treatment."

NOTE: If multiple reasons are given for the same doctor visit, follow the skip instruction for the category appearing first in the list.

- 3 Ask question 6b only if the "General checkup" box is marked in 6a. If a condition is given, circle "Y" and enter the condition in 6a. Then correct the box in 6a to "Diag. or treatment."

If it is volunteered that a condition was discovered during a routine physical examination, do not enter this condition as the reason for the doctor visit unless there were symptoms which led to the examination. If there were symptoms of this condition, make the necessary corrections. If there were no symptoms, leave the original entries.

- 4 Ask or mark 6c only if the "Diag. or treatment" box is marked in 6a.

- a If you already have a condition in the write-in box in 6a, mark "Condition reported in 6a" in the answer space in 6c without asking the question.

6

Purpose of Visit (continued)

6

- b If you ask 6c, record all conditions (or reasons for seeing the doctor) mentioned for that person in the answer space.
- c If the person visited the doctor for tests but no specific condition was discovered, enter the response verbatim.

Note: If the entry in 6a is "check up after operation," "checkup after accident," or something similar, the "Diag. or Treatment" box should be marked in 6a. Ask question 6c to obtain the name of the condition requiring these checkups.

7

Question 7, Location of Place

7

<p>If "Telephone" or "Home" in 3, go to next DV; otherwise ask:</p> <p>7. In what city (town), county, and State is the (place in 3) located?</p>	7.	<p>City</p> <hr/> <p>County</p> <hr/> <p>State</p> <hr/>
---	----	--

Ask question 7 to determine the location of the place the person went to for this visit. We are interested in knowing whether people use medical facilities located in the cities or counties in which they reside or whether they go to other cities or counties for care. If questions arise, tell the respondent that the doctor or the place will not be contacted for any reason.

Insert the place marked in question 3 when asking question 7 and enter the responses on the lines provided. If the respondent does not know in what city and/or county the place is located, enter "DK" on the appropriate line and the name of the State. "City" also includes town, village, suburb, etc.

If there are two or more consecutive visits to the same place, it is permissible to write "same" across the lines for question 7.

Footnote any special circumstance, for example, the person was on vacation and visited a doctor at the vacation site.

8

Question 8, How Long It Took

8

8. About how long did it take -- to get to the (place in 3) on (date in 2a)?	a.	_____ Minutes
--	----	---------------

- 1 Ask question 8 to determine how long it took to get to the place in 3. This is the interval between the time the person left his home, office, etc., to go to the place and the time he reached his destination. You must ask question 8 for each visit even if to the same place, since the times may vary. If necessary, convert the response to some number of minutes.

- 2 If there are special circumstances, such as the person was on vacation away from home, ask for the time it took to get to the doctor from the vacation residence or point of departure. If, however, the person took a trip expressly for the purpose of visiting a particular doctor or health care facility, ask for all travel time from his home to that destination including all modes of transportation, such as a bus, a train, or a plane and footnote the situation.

P1

Interviewer Check Item P1

P1

P1	A Condition page is required for the condition in question 6. If there is no Condition page, enter condition in item C and fill a page for it after completing columns for all required doctor visits.
----	--

Interviewer Check item P1 is a reminder to you that a Condition page must be filled for each condition reported on the 2-weeks Doctor Visit page. If there is no Condition page for this condition, enter the condition in item C2 with "DV" as the source and fill a page for it after completing all required doctor visit columns.

If this condition was described in item 1, question 3a or 18b on a completed Condition page, do not enter it in C2 or fill a separate page.

CHAPTER 6. HOSPITAL PAGE

A General Procedure

The Hospital page consists of two facing pages containing columns for four hospitalizations. Complete a separate hospital column for each hospitalization recorded in the "Hosp" box in item C1. If there are more than four hospitalizations reported for a family, use additional questionnaires. Begin with the first person reporting hospitalizations. Complete a column for each of his hospitalizations, and continue in the same manner for each succeeding person in the order they are listed on the questionnaire.

- 1 If a person was moved (transferred) from one hospital to another, for example, from an emergency hospital to a general hospital or from a general hospital to an extended care facility, record each as a separate stay.
- 2 When a hospitalization is for childbirth, fill one column for the mother and a separate column for the baby.

B Consistency Check - The number of columns filled for a person must equal the total number of hospitalizations in that person's column of item C1. If not, correct the figure in item C1 and explain the reason for the correction in a footnote. You may find it helpful to make a checkmark to the right of the number in item C1 as you complete each column. If the person had a total of three hospital stays recorded in item C1, there should be three checkmarks, "3✓."

C Use the Appropriate Word When Asking the Question

Because the Hospital page is filled for stays in regular hospitals as well as for stays in nursing homes, convalescent homes, rest homes and similar places, refer to the appropriate type of place in each question. The questions contain the words "nursing home" in parentheses. The instructions in later paragraphs use the word "hospital." However, the instructions given for a hospital stay also apply to stays in nursing homes, rest homes and similar places.

D Special Note on Frequent Hospitalizations for the Same Person

Sometimes a person has been in and out of the hospital several times during the reference period. If the respondent cannot remember or does not know the details of each different stay, ask him to estimate the necessary information using the calendar when needed. Enter all available information in a separate column for each estimated stay.

E Check With Question 6 or 15 of Appropriate Condition Page

If the hospitalization is for a condition for which you have filled a Condition page, ask if the nights reported in question 5 of the hospital column have been included in the number of bed days reported in question 6, or question 15a if the condition was carried past item AA. If they have not, correct the entry in question 6 or 15a. This check may be made after the hospital column(s) for the person have been completed.

HIS-100
(1978)

①

Item 1, Person Number

①

1.	Person number _____
----	---------------------

Enter the person number of the person for whom the column is being completed. This number must be correct. Otherwise, all the hospital information will be assigned to the wrong person.

2

Question 2, Date Entered Hospital

2

You said that -- was in the hospital (nursing home) during the past year.		USE YOUR CALENDAR	Month	Date	Year
2. When did -- enter the hospital (nursing home) (the last time)?	Make sure the YEAR is correct.	2.			19 ____

- 1 Read the introductory statement above question 2 once for a family before asking question 2 for the first hospitalization. Insert for the dashes the names of all family members for whom you have recorded hospitalizations in the "Hosp" column in Cl. If stays are reported in both a hospital and nursing home, read the introductory phrase as follows: "You said that you were in a hospital and a nursing home during the past year. Which place were you in last, the hospital or the nursing home?" so that you can insert the appropriate word in the following questions. Then continue with question 2.
- 2 If the person was in a hospital or a nursing home more than once during the period, add the parenthetical phrase, "the last time," to the end of question 2. Record the most recent hospital or nursing home stay first if the person had more than one stay. For the remaining columns, begin with the question, "When did you enter the hospital the time before?" and so on, for each subsequent hospitalization.
- 3 If the respondent cannot furnish the exact date, obtain the best estimate possible. Use the calendars or the list of holidays in your flashcard booklet to assist the respondent in recalling dates. Ask whatever additional questions seem appropriate.

Some examples of questions you might ask to assist the respondent in recalling dates are:

Can you recall the approximate date?

Do you know which week of the month it was?

Do you recall the day of the week you entered the hospital?

Was it before or after Memorial Day (or some other special date)?

Was it in the early part, the middle part or the last part of the month?

- a If, after your additional probing, the respondent is unable to give an exact date, determine whether it was the early, middle, or late part of the month; winter, spring, summer, or fall; or one of two months, such as 05-06; or between two dates, such as 06-10.
- b You should always be able to make some sort of write-in entry in question 2. For statistical purposes, a date must always be assigned for each hospital entry, so it is essential that you obtain the maximum amount of information available.

HIS-100
(1978)

② Date Entered Hospital (Continued)

②

- 4 Experience has shown that it is very easy to make a mistake in entering the year a person was hospitalized, particularly when you are working in a different calendar year from the reported year of hospitalization. In all cases, make sure that you have entered the correct year in question 2.

3

Question 3, Name and Address of Hospital

3

3. What is the name and address of this hospital (nursing home)?	Name
	Street
	City (or county) State

- 1 Enter the name and address of the hospital (nursing home, rest home, sanitarium, etc.). The exact street address is not required, but the name of the street on which the hospital is located is needed to help identify the hospital. If the name or the street is not known, enter "DK." If the city is not known or the hospital is not in a city, enter the county and State.
- 2 It is important to obtain the full and complete name of the hospital in order to classify each hospital by type. If the respondent abbreviates the name or supplies only a shortened local name, such as county hospital or general hospital, when he means Baker County Hospital or Detroit General Hospital, it is necessary to obtain and record the full name.
 - a Be sure that you have the correct name of the hospital. For example, Baker County may operate a hospital but its name is Jeremiah Wilson Memorial Hospital. In such a case, it would be impossible to identify Baker County Hospital for classification. In cases in which it is possible that the respondent could be giving the name as it is referred to locally, ask the respondent if that is the complete name of the hospital.
 - b For college infirmaries, we need to know the name of the university or college and whether it is the student health center (clinic) or the college hospital. For example, infirmary at UCLA would not be classifiable, whereas, UCLA Student Health Service or University of California Hospital would be.
- 3 Be sure that your entries of the name of the hospital, the street, and the city or county are legible. If the respondent is not sure how to spell any one of the names, spell it phonetically and footnote that it is a phonetic spelling.
- 4 If you are interviewing in the general area in which the hospital is located and have ready access to a local telephone directory, check it for doubtful hospital names. Also, if the respondent does not know the name of the street on which the hospital is located, check the telephone directory for that, when possible.

④

Question 4, Number of Nights in Hospital

④

4. How many nights was -- in the hospital (nursing home)?	4	_____ Nights
---	---	--------------

- 1 In question 4, enter the total nights spent in the hospital. Do not include any nights in the interview week. However, enter all nights in the hospital through "last Sunday night" including nights prior to the date used in the hospital probe questions.

If the respondent's answer is in terms of days, repeat the question so that he understands we are interested only in the number of nights. For example, a first answer of, "I was in for seven days," might mean six, seven or eight nights. Always follow up such answers by repeating the question or asking an additional question to clarify the answer.

- 2 Not Overnight, Delete - If you learn that the person did not remain overnight for this stay in the hospital, enter a dash (-) in question 4 and do not ask any further questions about this hospitalization. Delete this hospitalization by X-ing out the remainder of the column and correct the figure in item C.
- 3 Entire Stay Prior to Reference Period, Delete - If the respondent's answer to the date of hospital entry for question 2 and the number of nights for question 4 indicates that the entire stay was prior to the reference period, that is, before the date specified in the hospital probe question, check with the respondent to verify that you have the correct date of entry and number of nights. If the entire stay was prior to the reference period for the hospital probe question, delete this hospitalization by X-ing out the remainder of the column and correct the figure in item C. Explain in a footnote that you have verified the date of entry and number of nights, and that the stay was prior to the reference period.

5

Question 5, Nights in Past 12 Months and Two Weeks; in Hospital Last Sunday Night

5

Complete 5 from entries in 2 and 4; if not clear, ask the questions.	
5a. How many of these -- nights were during the past 12 months?	5a. _____ Nights
5b. How many of these -- nights were during the past 2 weeks?	5b. _____ Nights
5c. Was -- still in the hospital (nursing home) last Sunday night for this hospitalization (stay)?	5c. Y N

Question 5 is divided into three parts, and each part can usually be answered based on the information obtained earlier in questions 2 and 4. In such cases, do not ask the questions, but be sure to make the appropriate entries.

1 Question 5a, Number of Nights in Past 12 Months - "The past 12 months" is defined as from "last Sunday's" date a year ago (entered in 12-month Bed Days and Doctor visit reference date in C2) through last Sunday night, and includes both the beginning and ending dates.

- a If the answer to question 5a is not clear from earlier information, ask the question, using the appropriate yearly calendar to assist the respondent in recalling dates.
- b If all the nights in question 4 were in the past 12 months, copy the question 4 figure to question 5a.
- c If none of the nights in question 4 were in the past 12 months, enter a dash (for none) in question 5a. Do not delete the column in such a case. Complete the remaining entries in the column.

2 Question 5b, Nights in Hospital During Last Two Weeks - If the date in question 2 and the number of nights in question 4 show that none of the nights in the hospital could possibly have been last week or the week before, enter a dash in question 5b. If there is any chance at all that any part of the hospitalization was in the two-week reference period, and the answer is not clear from earlier information, ask the question and record the number of nights or enter a dash as the case may be.

3 Question 5c, Still There Last Sunday Night - Circle "Y" or "N" for this hospital stay in question 5c. If the date in question 2 and the number of nights in question 4 show that this stay could not possibly have included last Sunday night, circle "N" without asking the question. If there is any doubt, ask the question.

NOTE: If the person was in the hospital last Sunday night for his most recent hospital stay, "N" would be circled in question 5c for any previous hospital stays reported for him.

6

Question 6, Condition Causing Hospitalization

6

6. For what condition did -- enter the hospital (nursing home) -- do you know the medical name? If medical name unknown, enter an adequate description.		6. <input type="checkbox"/> Normal delivery <input type="checkbox"/> Normal at birth	
For delivery ask: Was this a normal delivery? For newborn, ask: Was the baby normal at birth?	} If "NO," ask: What was the matter?	Condition	
		Cause <input type="checkbox"/> On Card C <input type="checkbox"/> Acc. or Inj.	
		Kind	
		Part of body	

- 1 The entry in question 6 should fully describe the condition for which the person entered the hospital. If the medical name is not known, enter the best description of the condition which the respondent can give. All the rules for the entry of "cause," "kind," or "part of body" for the Condition page apply to entries in question 6. If this information is required in question 6 but is not known by the respondent, enter "DK" on the line. If the present effects of allergy are needed, enter these effects on the "kind" line. Present effects of stroke are not required.
- a For the persons going to the hospital for tests or diagnosis, enter the results of the tests or the final diagnosis if known; otherwise, enter the trouble or condition that made the tests seem necessary and indicate the results or final diagnosis is not known (dk).
- b If the person entered the hospital to have an operation, other than "vasectomy," enter in question 6 the condition which made the operation necessary. For example, if the response is "Amputation of one leg above knee," ask for the condition which made the operation necessary, for example, diabetes, leg cut in accident, etc. If the condition for which the operation was done is unknown, enter this fact together with the name or description of the operation, for example, "Hysterectomy, DK reason."
- c If more than one condition was diagnosed or treated during a particular hospital stay, enter all such conditions.
- d If the condition for which the person entered the hospital is on Card C, mark the "On Card C" box to indicate no further entries are required. Do not mark this box if a Card C condition is given in answer to a later part of question 6, for example, cause, kind, or part of body. If two conditions are reported as the reason for entering the hospital and one is not on Card C, record the required entries for cause, kind, and part of body for this condition.
- e If the condition for which the person entered the hospital indicates that an accident or injury was involved, mark the "Acc. or Inj." box and proceed as in paragraph 2, below.

6

Condition Causing Hospitalization (Continued)

6

- 2 Accidents or Injuries - If the entry in question 6 is the result of an injury, the rules for the entries of "part of body" and "kind of injury" that apply to the Condition page, question 18a, also apply to question 6, for example, "one lower leg broken." Enter the kind of injury on the "Kind" line and the part of body on the "Part of body" line.
- 3 Deliveries and Births - For deliveries and births, ask question 6 this way:
 - a For the mother ask, "Was this a normal delivery?" If "Yes," mark the "Normal delivery" box and go to question 7. If "No," ask, "What was the matter?" and record on the condition line the respondent's description of the complications, for example, delivery—breech.
 - b For the baby ask, "Was the baby normal at birth?" If "Yes," mark the "Normal at birth" box and go to question 7. If "No," ask "What was the matter?" and record on the condition line the respondent's description of what was wrong with the baby, for example, newborn—incubator baby, jaundice.

NOTE: The delivery for the mother may be "Normal" but the baby may be born with a deformity. Conversely, the mother's delivery may have complications, for example, Caesarian section, but the baby may be normal. In some cases, it is possible that the mother's delivery may be complicated by an illness condition. When in doubt as to what constitutes "complications," enter all available information.

⑦

Question 7, Operations Performed

⑦

7a. Were any operations performed on -- during this stay at the hospital (nursing home)?	7a.	Y	• N (8)
b. What was the name of the operation? If name of operation is not known, describe what was done.	b.		
c. Any other operations during this stay?	c.	Y (Describe) 7	N

- 1 Ask question 7 for stays in nursing homes, rest homes, etc., as well as for hospital stays, since some of the procedures, which by our definition are operations, may be performed in these places.
- 2 If any operations were performed during this stay in the hospital, enter the name of the operation in the write-in space in 7b or 7c. If the name of the operation is not known, ask the respondent to describe what was done and enter this description. Be sure to record each operation, if more than one was performed during this stay.
 - a Operation - Any cutting of the skin, including stitching of cuts or wounds. Include cutting of other tissue, scraping of internal parts of the body, for example, curettage of the uterus, and setting of fractures and dislocations. Also, include the insertion of instruments in body openings for internal examination and treatment, such as bronchoscopy, proctoscopy, cystoscopy, and the introduction of tubes for drainage. Include anything ending in "-ectomy," for example, appendectomy (removal of appendix), tonsillectomy (removal of tonsils), etc.
 - b In some cases, respondents may not think of the setting of fractures and dislocations or the stitching of cuts or wounds as operations. If the person entered the hospital for such an injury and the respondent says no operation was performed, ask if the bone or joint was set (put in traction or in a cast) or if stitches were taken in the cut or wound. If the answer is "Yes," enter the action taken as the name of the operation, for example, "Broken wrist" in question 6, "Wrist set" in question 7. If the respondent reports that the bone was not set, etc., explain the circumstances in 7c.
 - c Exclude injections, transfusions and routine blood tests, pumping out or washing out of the stomach or bowels. Also, exclude routine circumcision for a newborn baby. It is not necessary to enter these terms in question 7. If operations of this kind are reported, ask 7c before circling "N" in 7a.

⑦ Operations Performed (Continued)

⑦

3 If more than one operation is performed, ask if both were connected with the condition in question 6. If the operation was not performed for the condition recorded in question 6, ask for the name of the condition and record it in question 7 in addition to the name of the operation.

a An acceptable entry would be:

Question 6 - Tonsillitis

Question 7 - Tonsillectomy

or

Question 6 - Goiter

Question 7 - Removal of thyroid gland

b An unacceptable entry would be:

Question 6 - Gallstones

Question 7 - Removed gallbladder and hysterectomy

or

Question 6 - Kidney trouble

Question 7 - Cystoscopy and removal of tumor

In b above, we need to know the reason for the hysterectomy or the site and kind of tumor.

8 - 9

Question 8 and 9, Place of Residence

8 - 9

If newborn go to next hosp. otherwise ask	
8. At the time -- entered the hospital was he living at this address?	8. 1 Y (10) 2 N
9. In what city (town), county, and State was -- living?	9. City _____
	County _____
	State _____

These questions determine the person's residence at the time of the hospitalization. We are interested in knowing whether or not people use hospitals located in the cities or counties in which they reside. If the hospitalization is for a newborn, go to the next one.

In question 8, "this address" refers to the address given on the Household page.

Ask question 9 and enter the responses on the lines provided. If the respondent does not know in what city and/or county the person was living, enter "DK" on the appropriate line and the name of the State. "City" also includes town, village, suburb, etc.

10

Question 10, How long it Took

10

10. About how long did it take -- to get to the hospital on <u>gate in 2</u> ?	10.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Less than 30 minutes
(Was it less than 30 minutes or more than 30 minutes?)		2 <input type="checkbox"/> 30-59 minutes
(Was it less than one hour or more than one hour?)		3 <input type="checkbox"/> 60-89 minutes
		4 <input type="checkbox"/> 90+ minutes

Ask question 10 to determine how long it took to get to the hospital for this hospitalization. This is the interval between the time the person left his home, etc. to go to the hospital and the time he reached his destination.

If the respondent cannot answer the first time you ask the question, use one or both of the probes printed below question 10 to obtain the appropriate answer.

If there are special circumstances, such as the person was on vacation away from home, ask for the time it took to get to the hospital from the vacation residence or point of departure. If, however, the person took a trip expressly for the purpose of going to the hospital, ask for all travel time from his home to that hospital, including all modes of transportation, such as a bus, train, or plane and footnote the situation.

P2

Interviewer Check Item P2

P2

P2

A Condition page is required if there is an entry of "1" or more nights in 5b. If there is no Condition page, enter condition in item C and fill a page for it after completing columns for all required hospitalizations.

- 1 Item P2 is a reminder to you of when a Condition page is required for a condition reported on the Hospital page.
 - a A condition reported in question 6 or 7 should have a completed Condition page if some part of the hospitalization was during the past two weeks.
 - b If the hospital stay is for delivery and some part of the stay was during the past two weeks, a Condition page should be filled for the mother but not for the newborn baby if he was normal at birth. If he was not normal at birth, a Condition page should be completed for the baby.
- 2 If there is no Condition page for a or b above, enter the condition in item C2 after completing this hospital column and "Hosp." as the source. Then carry the condition(s) through the Condition page after completing columns for all required hospitalizations.

If this condition was described in item 1, question 3a or 18b on a completed Condition page, do not enter it in C2 or fill a separate page.

Chapter 7. Health Insurance

The Health Insurance page consists of two facing pages containing questions on Medicare and other types of health insurance coverage.

Many people are covered by some form of a health insurance plan. The level of health care utilization varies by the types and amounts of insurance people have. Therefore, it is important to have measures of the types of health insurance coverage and to compare this with other health information, such as doctor and dental visits, hospital stays, etc.

① - ③

Questions 1-3, Medicare Coverage

① - ③

<p>Medicare is a Social Security health insurance program for disabled persons and for persons 65 years old and over. People covered by Medicare have a card that looks like this. Show card</p>		
<p>1a. Is anyone in this family covered by Medicare?</p>	<p>Y N (4) DK</p>	
<p>b. Is -- covered? Mark box in person's column.</p>		<p>1b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Not cov. 3 <input type="checkbox"/> D</p>
<p>Ask for each person with "Covered" in 1b.</p>		
<p>2a. Is -- covered by that part of Social Security Medicare which pays for hospital bills? Mark box in person's column.</p>		<p>2a. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. Hosp. 2 <input type="checkbox"/> No 3 <input type="checkbox"/> D</p>
<p>b. Is -- covered by that part of Medicare which pays for doctor's bills, that is, the Medicare plan for which he or some agency must pay a certain amount each month? Mark box in person's column.</p>		<p>b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. Med. 2 <input type="checkbox"/> No 3 <input type="checkbox"/> D</p>
<p>Ask for each person with "DK" in 2 and for each person under 65 with "Covered" in 1b.</p>		
<p>3. May I please see the Social Security Medicare card(s) for -- (and --) to determine the (type/dates) of coverage? Transcribe the information from the card or mark the "Card N.A." box</p>		<p>3. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. Hosp. 3 <input type="checkbox"/> Card N.A. 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. Med.</p>

- 1 Although it is most common for persons 65 years old or over to have Social Security Medicare coverage, in certain situations people under 65 may also be covered. Therefore, questions 1-3 must be asked for the family, regardless of the ages of the family members.

Read the introduction above question 1, show the Medicare Card and then ask 1a about Medicare coverage for the family. If the response is "Yes" or "DK" ask 1b for each person and mark the "Covered" or "Not covered" box in each person's column. If the respondent doesn't know if a particular person is covered by Medicare, mark the "DK" box in 1b.

- 2 Ask questions 2a and b for each person with the "Covered" box marked in 1b and mark the appropriate box in his column.

If the respondent doesn't know the type of coverage but a certain amount is paid each month, that person has medical coverage. Mark "DK" in 2a and "Cov. Med." in 2b.

- 3 Ask question 3 for each person with "DK" in 2 and for each person under 65 with "Cov." in 1b. Insert the names of these persons so the respondent needs to make only one trip to look for the Medicare cards.

If there are persons 65 or over, use the word "type," if the person is under 65, use the word "dates." If there are persons in both age groups, use both terms when asking the question, for example, "May I please see the Social Security Medicare Card for your husband and daughter to determine the type and dates of coverage?"

- a The type of coverage a person has will be indicated by a date entered opposite it under the "Effective date." If a date has been entered across from "Hospital Insurance" then that person has hospital coverage. If there is a date entered across from "Medical Insurance," then the person has medical coverage.

- b If the card is available, transcribe the coverage information from the card to the person's column in question 3a by marking one or both of the "covered" boxes.

If the card is not available, mark the "Card N.A." box.

- c If you are shown a card other than a Medicare card, do not mark a box but footnote the type of card shown.

④

Question 4, Health Insurance

④

We are interested in all kinds of health insurance plans except those which pay only for accidents.		
4a. (Not counting Medicare) Is anyone in the family covered by hospital insurance, that is, a health insurance plan which pays any part of a hospital bill?	Y	N (4d)
b. What is the name of the plan? (Record in Table H.1.)	-----	
c. Is anyone in the family covered by any other hospital insurance plan?	Y (Reqs 4b and c)	N
d. Is anyone in the family covered by any (other) health insurance plan which pays any part of a DOCTOR'S or SURGEON'S bill?	Y	N (5)
e. What is the name of the plan? (Record in Table H.1., reask 4d)	-----	

- 1 Question 4 concerns health insurance, other than Medicare. Read the introductory statement above question 4a. Read the parenthetical phrase "Not counting Medicare" only if "Y" or "DK" was circled in question 1a.

- a A health insurance plan is specifically designed to pay all or part of the hospital, doctor, surgeon, or other medical expenses of the insured individual. The plan, in order to be considered as insurance, must be a formal one with defined membership and benefits. For the purpose of this survey, health insurance excludes the following:

- 1) Plans limited to "dread diseases" only, such as polio or cancer.

④ Health Insurance (Continued)

④

- 2) Insurance that pays only on the basis of the number of days missed from work.
- 3) Public welfare, Medicaid, care given children under the "Crippled Children's Program," etc.
- 4) Insurance that pays only for accidents, such as liability insurance held by a car or property owner, insurance covering children for accidents at school or camp, etc.
- 5) Care given to dependents of military personnel (CHAMPUS).
- 6) Veteran's benefits.
- 7) Insurance that pays only for dental bills.
- 8) Social Security Medicare.
- 9) "Income maintenance" insurance which pays the person a fixed amount of money both in and out of the hospital.

NOTE: However, DO include "extra cash" insurance plans which pay a person a fixed amount of money ONLY WHILE HE IS A PATIENT IN A HOSPITAL. Use this distinction only if questions arise. Do not probe.

- b Payment of Plans - Premiums or the costs of health insurance may be paid by the insured person, his family, his employer, his union, a club, a fraternal organization or some other group of which the insured person is a member. The premium may be a part of his dues or it may be paid by an employer as a fringe benefit. The insuring organizations may be either nonprofit or commercial groups. Payments by the insurance company may be made directly to the hospital or doctor, or to the insured person himself.
- c Name of Plan - We are interested in the specific names of the insurance plans, for example, Aetna, Blue Cross, Metropolitan, John Hancock, etc. Do not record the type of plan, such as family plan, major medical, high or low option. If the respondent does not know the name of the plan, ask if you may obtain the name from his membership card or policy and enter it in Table H.I. If the membership card or policy is not available, but the respondent tells you the plan is provided through his union, fraternal group, or employer, enter the name of the group or employer in Table H.I. and indicate that the name of the plan is unknown.

- d Insurance That Pays Hospital Bills - Any insurance which pays all or part of the hospital bill for the hospitalized person. The hospital bill should include only the bill submitted for the hospital itself, the cost of room and meals, and may also include the costs of other services, such as operating room, laboratory tests, X-rays, and medicine. Excluded are the charges for the doctor's or surgeon's services, as well as for special nurses.
- e Insurance That Pays Doctor's and Surgeon's Bills - Any insurance which pays all or part of the doctor's or surgeon's bill.

2 If the answer to 4a is "No," skip to question 4d. If the answer to 4a is "Yes," ask 4b and record in Table H.I. all plans reported; then ask 4c. If additional plans are reported in 4c, record these plans on separate lines of Table H.I. Reask 4b and c until a final "No" answer is received to 4c, then circle "N" and go to 4d. Use the parenthetical "other" when reasking question 4d. Ask question 4e, if required, and record any new plan(s) in the same manner as for 4b. If the respondent reports the same plan and policy in answer to 4d or e as he did in 4b, delete the "Y" in 4d, if it is circled, and circle "N." Do not enter this plan again in Table H.I.

- a When a final "No" is received to 4d, complete Table H.I. Thus, you will record all plans in Table H.I. before completing any of the other parts.
- b Consider Blue Cross and Blue Shield to be one health insurance plan, even if given separately in answer to questions 4b and 4e, i.e. Blue Cross given in answer to 4b and Blue Shield given in answer to 4e. If, however, you find that household members are covered by separate Blue Cross/Blue Shield policies, list these on separate lines of Table H.I. You may use the abbreviation BC/BS when entering these plans in Table H.I. Blue Cross/Blue Shield is the only plan you may abbreviate.

Questions 5 and 6, Details of Plan

5 - 6

5 - 6

TABLE H.I.			
PLAN 1	5c. Does this plan pay any part of hospital expenses? 1 Y 2 N 3 DK	6a. Is -- covered under this (name) plan? b. During the past 12 months did -- receive medical care which has been or will be paid for by this plan?	6a. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Not cov. (NP) b. 1 Y 2 N 3 DK
5a. Was this (name) plan obtained through an employer or union? 1 Y (c) 2 N 3 DK b. Was it obtained through some other group? 1 Y 2 N 3 DK	d. Does this plan pay any part of doctor's or surgeon's bills for operations? 1 Y 2 N 3 DK		
PLAN 2	5c. Does this plan pay any part of hospital expenses? 1 Y 2 N 3 DK	6a. Is -- covered under this (name) plan? b. During the past 12 months did -- receive medical care which has been or will be paid for by this plan?	6a. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Not cov. (NP) b. 1 Y 2 N 3 DK
5a. Was this (name) plan obtained through an employer or union? 1 Y (c) 2 N 3 DK b. Was it obtained through some other group? 1 Y 2 N 3 DK	d. Does this plan pay any part of doctor's or surgeon's bills for operations? 1 Y 2 N 3 DK		

Ask these questions as a block for each plan listed in Table H.I. after all appropriate parts of question 4 have been asked. Ask all of question 5 for plan 1, and then ask question 6 separately for each family member for plan 1. Then go to questions 5 and 6 for plan 2, etc. Insert the name of the plan when asking 5a and 6a so the respondent knows to which plan you are referring. If there is more than one policy for the same plan, be sure the respondent knows to which policy you are referring.

- 1 Questions 5a and b - These questions determine if the policy was obtained through an employer, union, or some other group. If questions arise, we are interested in how the plan was originally obtained, even if it was many years ago and the plan is no longer maintained in the same manner.
- 2 Question 5c - Ask for all plans carried through Table H.I., regardless of whether they were reported in answer to the hospital insurance question (4a) or the doctor's and surgeon's question (4d).
- 3 Question 5d - Ask for all plans entered in Table H.I. Doctor's or surgeon's bills are those for an operation or delivery, pre- or post surgical care, or pre- or postnatal care, either in the hospital, at the doctor's office, or some other place.
- 4 Questions 6a and b - Ask separately for each family member, and mark the "Covered" box and ask 6b, or mark the "Not covered" box and go to the next person. If the respondent doesn't know whether or not a family member is covered by a plan, enter "DK" and go to question 6a for the next person. For every "Covered" box marked, there should be an entry in 6b.

I-7

Item I and Question 7, Coverage

I-7

I For each person review 1, 2, 3, and 6 for each plan and determine if "Covered" by either Medicare or insurance, or "Not covered."	I 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Cov. <i>INP.</i> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Not cov. <i>INP.</i>
Ask for each person "Not covered." Many people do not carry health insurance for various reasons. Hand Card N 7a. Which of these statements describes why -- is not covered by any health insurance plan? Any other reason?	Circle all reasons given → 7a. 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Mark box or ask: b. What is the MAIN reason -- is not covered by any health insurance plan?	(Specify) No <input type="checkbox"/> Only one reason b. 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> (Specify)

- 1 Item I - If a "Covered" box is marked anywhere in questions 1, 2, 3 or 6 for a person, consider the person covered, and mark the "Covered" box in item I. If they are not covered, mark the "Not covered" box. If the only entry in 1, 2, 3 or 6 for a person is "DK," or a combination of "No" and "DK," then enter "DK" in item I. Complete item I for all persons before going to question 7.

- 2 Question 7 - Ask question 7 only for individuals who are indicated in item I as having no health insurance. Read the introductory statement above question 7 once for a family, show Card N to the respondent, and then ask question 7 for each appropriate person. Leave question 7 blank if "DK" is entered in item I.
 - a Circle the number(s) indicated for each person not covered by health insurance. Ask "Any other reason?" for each person until a "No" answer is given.
 - b If only one number is circled in 7a, mark the "Only one reason" box in 7b. If more than one number is circled, ask 7b and circle the number given as the main reason this person is not covered by health insurance. If the same "other" reason is given for other persons not having insurance, enter "same" in the remaining columns. For example, if in column 1 you have "Haven't been with firm long enough," enter "same" in the remaining appropriate columns.

Chapter 8. Usual Source of Care

The Usual Source of Care page consists of two facing pages designed to obtain information about where people usually receive health care and the relative convenience of using these sources.

Data concerning the usual source of medical care and the geographic location of this source of care will allow analysts to examine the level of utilization of medical care in relation to various health characteristics. A further analysis will determine the extent to which certain parts of the country may be medically underserved.

Ask questions 1 through 8 as a block for each person.

①

Question 1, Usual Place

①

1. Is there a particular clinic, health center, doctor's office or other place that --
usually goes to if he is sick or needs advice about his health?

1. 1 Y 2 N (7)

- 1 Question 1 determines whether or not there is a place the person usually goes to for health care. If the respondent does not answer "Yes" or "No" but indicates there is more than one doctor seen, reread the question emphasizing "particular" and "usually." If the respondent still does not answer yes or no, circle "N". If the person is bedridden but has a particular doctor come to the home to give medical care or advice consider this a "Yes" response.

Do not lead the respondent by referring to a "family doctor" or "regular doctor." Also, do not refer to any information the respondent may have given you on the Doctor Visit page.

- 2 If the respondent says "Yes" in question 1, but in answer to a later question you discover the person has never been to the facility, footnote the situation. Continue to ask the remaining questions, accepting "DK's" without additional probes.

2

Question 2, Kind of Place

2

<p>2. What kind of place is it - a clinic, a health center, a hospital, a doctor's office, or some other place?</p> <p>IF HOSPITAL: Is this an outpatient clinic or the emergency room?</p> <p>IF CLINIC: Is this a hospital outpatient clinic, a company clinic, or some other kind of clinic?</p>	<p>2. <input type="checkbox"/> 1 Doctor's office (group practice or doctor's clinic)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 2 Hospital outpatient clinic</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 3 Home</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 4 Hospital emergency room</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 5 Company or industry clinic</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 6 Health center</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> 7 Other (Specify) <u>7</u></p>
---	--

Ask question 2 to determine the kind of place. If the response is "Hospital" or "Clinic," ask the appropriate probe question to determine if this was the outpatient clinic, emergency room, company clinic, etc. Mark the box which indicates the kind of place (not the name of the place) in accordance with the following definitions:

- 1 Doctor's Office - The office of a doctor in private practice. This may be an office in the doctor's home, an individual office in an office building or a suite of offices occupied by several doctors. This category also includes "doctor's clinic," meaning the offices of a group of doctors.
- 2 Hospital Outpatient Clinic - A unit of a hospital where persons may go for medical care without being admitted as an inpatient.
- 3 Home - Any place the person was staying at the time of the doctor's visit. It may be his own home, the home of a friend, a hotel room, etc.
- 4 Hospital Emergency Room - A unit of a hospital where persons may receive medical care, usually of an urgent nature, without or before being admitted as an inpatient.
- 5 Company or Industry Clinic - A company or plant doctor's office or clinic which is operated solely for the employees of that company or industry.
- 6 Health Center - A public or private ambulatory facility generally sponsored by a unit of local government and receiving Federal funding. They are frequently called Community Health Centers or Neighborhood Health Centers since they provide medical care only to residents of a particular area.
- 7 Other - Any response that cannot be classified in categories 1-6 or one which you are not sure of. Give all information available.

3

Question 3, One Particular Doctor

3

3. Is there ONE particular doctor -- usually sees at (place in 2)?	3. 1 Y	2 N
--	--------	-----

Ask question 3 to determine if the person usually sees one particular doctor at the place specified in question 2. If the person usually sees a nurse or some other medical person, circle "N."

4

Question 4, Location of Place

4

If "Home" in 2, go to 6; otherwise ask: 4. In what city (town), county and State is the (place in 2) located?	4.	City
		County
		State

- 1 Ask question 4 to determine the location of the place specified in question 2. We are interested in knowing whether people use medical facilities located in the cities or counties in which they reside or whether they go to other cities or counties for care. If questions arise, tell the respondent the doctor or the place will not be contacted for any reason.
- 2 Insert the place marked in question 2 when asking question 4 and enter the responses on the lines provided. If the respondent does not know in what city and/or county the place is located, enter "DK" on the appropriate line and the name of the State. "City" also includes town, village, suburb, etc.

5

Question 5, How Long it Takes

5

5. About how long does it usually take -- to get to the (place in 2)?	5. _____ Minutes
---	------------------

- 1 Ask question 5 to determine how long it usually takes to get to the place in 2. This is the interval between the time the person left his home, office, etc., to go to the place and the time he reached his destination. If necessary, correct the response to some number of minutes.

If the person took a trip expressly for the purpose of visiting a particular doctor or health care facility, ask for all travel time from his home to that destination including all modes of transportation, such as a bus, a train, or a plane and footnote the situation.

6

Question 6, Same or Other Place

6

6. The LAST time -- saw a doctor was it at the SAME (place in 2) or some other place?

6. 1 Same place (NP)
 2 Other place 8'

Ask question 6 to determine whether or not the person went to his usual source of care place when a doctor was last seen. Insert the kind of place marked in question 2 when asking this question. Do not make any changes to the 2-week Doctor Visit page because of the response to question 6.

7

Question 7, No Usual Place

7

Hand Card P

7. Many people do not have a particular place they usually go when they are sick or need advice about their health. Could you please give me the number of the statement which is the MAIN reason -- does not have a particular place he usually goes?

- 1 - Have two or more usual doctors or places depending on what is wrong.
- 2 - Haven't needed a doctor.
- 3 - Previous doctor no longer available.
- 4 - Haven't been able to find the right doctor.
- 5 - Recently moved to area.
- 6 - Other reason - Please specify

7.

1 2 3 4 5 6 (Specify) 7

Ask question 7 for all persons with "No" in question 1. Hand the respondent Card P and read the introductory phrase. Ask question 7 and circle the number given by the respondent. If the respondent does not give a number from the card but gives a response that is exactly the same as one listed, circle the appropriate number without reasking. If the verbal response is not exactly the same as one of the listed categories, ask the respondent to give a number. If the answer still doesn't fit, circle 6-"other" and enter the response verbatim. If the respondent gives more than one number, repeat the second sentence of the question reemphasizing "MAIN."

8

Question 8, Place of Last Visit

8

If 2 week DV in CI, go to NP; otherwise ask:

8. The LAST time -- saw a doctor was it at a clinic, a health center, a hospital, a doctor's office, or some other place?

IF HOSPITAL: Is this an outpatient clinic or the emergency room?

IF CLINIC: Is this a hospital outpatient clinic, a company clinic, or some other kind of clinic?

8. 1 Doctor's office (group practice or doctor's clinic)
 2 Hospital outpatient clinic
 3 Home
 4 Hospital emergency room
 5 Company or industry clinic
 6 Health center
 7 Other (Specify) 7

Ask question 8 in the same manner as question 2 for all persons who have no usual source of care ("N" in question 1) or who did not use their usual source the last time they saw a doctor ("Other place" in question 6). Do not ask question 8 if a 2-week doctor visit was reported for this person.

Chapter 9. Blood Donor Page

The Blood Donor Page consists of two facing pages containing questions about giving or selling blood and is asked of persons aged 17-64.

A number of public and private agencies are interested in obtaining information about people who have given or sold blood and their reasons for donating. These statistics will aid in planning programs designed to create more public awareness and participation in this vital program.

(D)

Interviewer Check Item D

(D)

D	1 <input type="checkbox"/> 17-64 (1)
	2 <input type="checkbox"/> Other (NP)

Mark a box in item D in each person's column. Ask question 1-4 as a block for each person with the "17-64" box marked. Mark the "Other" box for all other persons and go to the next person.

(1)

Question 1, Gave Blood Past 12 months

(1)

<p>1a. During the past 12 months, has -- given or sold any blood to a blood bank, a hospital, the Red Cross, or anywhere else?</p> <hr/> <p>b. During the past 12 months, how many times has -- given or sold blood?</p> <p>Hand Card B For each time reported in 1b, ask</p> <p>c. Which of the reasons listed on this card best describes why -- gave blood (the last time the time before that, etc.)? Please give me the number of the reason.</p> <p>1 - Sold blood. 2 - Replaced blood used by a relative or friend. 3 - Unpaid donation to a blood bank to assure free blood for this family in the future. 4 - Other unpaid blood donation which was NOT for replacement and did NOT assure free blood for this family in the future. 5 - Some other reason - Specify</p>	<p>1a. 1 Y 2 N (2)</p> <hr/> <p>b. _____ Times</p> <p>(Last time) 1 2 3 4 5 7</p> <p>c. 1 _____ (Specify)</p> <p>2 _____ (Specify)</p> <p>3 _____ (Specify)</p> <p>4 _____ (Specify)</p>
---	---

1 Question 1a determines whether or not the person has given or sold any blood during the 12-month reference period prior to interview week (use the 12-month reference period given for bed days and doctor visits). Ask question 1b if "Y" is circled in 1a to determine the number of times that the person has given or sold blood during the reference period.

① Blood Donor Page (Continued)

①

2 Question 1c obtains information about the reasons for persons giving or selling blood. Ask this question separately for each time entered in 1b. If only one donation was reported, hand the respondent Card B and say, "Which of the reasons listed on this card best describes why you gave blood?" If more than one donation was reported, add the parenthetical phrase, "the last time," for the most recent event and "the time before that" for each preceding event. Continue to ask the question until all events are accounted for.

- a. Space is provided for four separate events. Fill the space labeled "1 (last time)" first, then "2," etc. If there are more than four times in 1b, indicate this in the question area of 1c by an entry such as, "donation 5, per. 4, #3."
- b. Circle the number of the reason given in the appropriate answer space. If the respondent gives some other reason, circle "5" and enter the response on the "specify" line.

② — ③

Questions 2 and 3, EVER Given or Sold Blood

② — ③

2a. Has -- EVER given or sold blood to a blood bank, a hospital, the Red Cross or anywhere else?	2a. 1 Y 2 N 3 DK 4
b. About how long has it been since -- LAST gave or sold blood? (Was it more than 5 years or less than 5 years?) (Was it more than 10 years or less than 10 years?)	b. _____ Years 99 -- DK
3. About how many times has -- EVER given or sold blood?	3. _____ Times 99 -- DK

- 1 Ask question 2 for all persons with "N" circled in 1a in order to determine if they have EVER given or sold blood and if so, to find out how long it has been since the last time. If necessary, help the respondent estimate the length of time by using probes such as those shown below 2b. Enter the response on the appropriate line by specifying the number of years on the "Years" line or by marking the "DK" box.
- 2 Ask question 3 to determine the total number of times this person has ever given or sold blood.

④

Question 4, Ever Asked in Person

④

4. Has -- EVER been asked in person, either face-to-face or over the telephone, to give or sell blood?	4	1	Y	2	N	9	OK
--	---	---	---	---	---	---	----

Ask question 4 whether or not the respondent ever gave or sold blood. We are interested in determining if the respondent has ever been approached in person to give or sell blood.

If questions arise, only oral contacts in which the respondent was specifically asked to give or sell blood are acceptable. Footnote any responses other than "Yes" or "No."

④

Item R1, Respondent

④

R1 Q's 1-4	For persons 17 years or over, show who responded for (or was present during the asking of) Questions 1-4. If persons responded for self, show whether entirely or partly.	R1	<input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self-ent. <input type="checkbox"/> Responded for self-p. Person ___ was respo
---------------	---	----	--

Complete Item R1 in the same manner as item R in the Probe pages to show who responded for the Blood Donor Page.

Chapter 10. Person Pages

Person pages 40 and 41 obtain information about veteran status. Pages 42 and 43 obtain information about supplementary income. Pages 44 and 45 obtain information on height and weight, education, racial and national origin. Pages 46 and 47 contain questions about work status and income. These data, when compared with the associated health information, will provide a more complete picture of the nation's health.

①

Question 1, Service in the Armed Forces

①

Mark box or ask:	<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
1. Did -- ever serve in the Armed Forces of the United States?	1. 1 Y 2 N (NP)

- 1 Ask question 1 for all persons 17 years old and over.
 - a Armed Forces - U.S. Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps or Coast Guard and any National Guard Unit which was activated as part of the regular Armed Forces.
 - b Armed Forces Service - "Active Duty" - Include the reservists or National Guardsmen who have served the 4-6 month period in connection with the provisions of the Reserve Forces Act of 1955. Persons who were or are in the Reserves but have only attended weekly meetings, summer camp or the like and have not completed the 4-6 month program, have not been on "active duty."
 - c Exclude as having served in the Armed Forces persons working in civilian positions for the Armed Forces, serving in the Merchant Marines, or serving in a National Guard Unit or reserve unit not activated as part of the regular Armed Forces.

Question 2, Details of Service

<p>2a. In which branch or branches of the Armed Forces did --serve? Mark all that apply</p>	<p>2a. <input type="checkbox"/> Air Force <input type="checkbox"/> Army <input type="checkbox"/> Navy <input type="checkbox"/> Marines <input type="checkbox"/> Coast Guard</p>
<p>----- If only one entry in 2a, mark corresponding box; otherwise ask:</p>	
<p>b. In which did -- serve most recently?</p>	<p>b. <input type="checkbox"/> Air Force <input type="checkbox"/> Army <input type="checkbox"/> Navy <input type="checkbox"/> Marines <input type="checkbox"/> Coast Guard</p>
<p>c. When did -- serve in the (entry in 2b) ? Circle code in descending order of priority. Thus if person served in Vietnam and in Korea, circle VN.</p>	<p>c. <input type="checkbox"/> 1 VN 5 PVN <input type="checkbox"/> 2 KW 6 OS <input type="checkbox"/> 3 WW II 9 DK <input type="checkbox"/> 4 WW I</p>
<p>d. In what year did -- leave the (entry in 2b)?</p>	<p>d. 19 _____ Year</p>
<p>e. How many total years did -- serve on active duty in the (entries in 2a)?</p>	<p>e. _____ Years</p>
<p>f. Does -- have a service connected disability?</p>	<p>f. <input type="checkbox"/> Y 2 N</p>

- 1 Ask question 2a for all persons with "Yes" in question 1 to determine in which branch or branches of the Armed Forces the person served. If the person served in more than one branch, mark all boxes that apply.
 - a If the National Guard is reported, determine in which branch of the Armed Forces the person served while on active duty and mark that box in 2a.
 - b If a female reports "WACS" or "WAVES," etc. probe to determine which branch of the service this is if you don't know, and mark the appropriate box.
 - c If there is any question as to which box to mark, enter the response verbatim in the answer space of 2a.
- 2 Ask question 2b only for persons reporting more than one branch in 2a to determine which branch he served in most recently.
- 3 When asking questions 2c and d, refer to the entry in 2b. If a question is raised as to what dates are covered by a given war, use the dates on the questionnaire.

Circle one of the codes listed in 2c based on the following rules:

 - a If the person served in one or more of the four major conflicts of this century, that is, the Vietnam Era, the Korean War, World War II, or World War I, circle the code for the most recent wartime service, regardless of any peacetime service or when his service was terminated

② Details of Service (continued)

②

- b For persons who served in a time period other than those noted above, circle "OS" for "Other Service (all other periods)," unless the person served after the Vietnam Era (May 1975 to present). In these cases, circle "PVN." The "OS" code also covers service prior to World War I.
- 4 In 2e, we are interested in the total number of years a person served on active duty in the Armed Forces. Therefore insert all branches marked in 2a when asking the question. Exclude time spent in nonactive duty reserve status. Be careful when calculating time for reservists and National Guard.
- 5 In question 2f, a "service connected" disability is a health problem which resulted from something that happened while the person was in the Armed Forces for which he receives or is eligible for financial benefits or medical services from the government. Use this definition if questions arise.

③

Question 3, Retirement Payments or Pension

③

3a. Does -- get retirement payments or a pension from the (entry in 2b) or the Veterans Administration?	3a.	Y	5 N (H)
b. From which does -- get the retirement payments or the pension?	b.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Service	2 <input type="checkbox"/> V/

Ask question 3a, again inserting the branch entered in 2b. Include as pension any cash payments or annuities received from those sources. Then ask question 3b to determine if the person receives the pension from service in the Armed Forces or the Veterans Administration.

Questions 4 and 5, Supplemental Income

4a. Does anyone in this family receive assistance through the "Aid to Families with Dependent Children" Program, sometimes called "AFDC" or "ADC"?	Y N (5)	
b. Which (other) family members are included in the AFDC assistance payment? Mark "AFDC" box in person's column.		4b. <input type="checkbox"/> AFDC
c. Are any other family members included in this program?	Y (Reask 4b and c) N	
5a. Does anyone in this family receive the "Supplemental Security Income" or "SSI" gold-colored check?	Y N (6)	
b. Who receives this check? Mark "SSI" box in person's column.		5b. <input type="checkbox"/> SSI
c. Anyone else?	Y (Reask 5b and c) N	

1 Question 4 - The "Aid to Families with Dependent Children" program was set up many years ago as an amendment to the Social Security Act and is known as AFDC and as ADC. Payments are based upon family income and number of dependent children. We are interested in identifying the family unit, that is, the adult and children, for whom these payments are intended.

- a If, after asking 4c, the respondent has not identified the adult AND the child(ren), probe to determine the adult whose name the checks are in or the child(ren) the money is for and mark the "AFDC" box in any additional columns.
- b If you still do not have this "family unit," footnote the situation. For example, "children live with grandparents," or "mother not household member."

2 Question 5 - The "Supplemental Security Income" program provides monthly checks to individuals in financial need who are 65 and over and to people in need at any age who are blind or disabled.

Questions 6-8, Health Care Coverage

<p>6a. There is a national program called Medicaid which pays for health care for persons in need. (In this State it is also called _____.) During the past 12 months, has anyone in this family received health care which has been or will be paid for by _____?</p>	<p>Y N (7)</p>	
<p>b. Who was this? Mark "Medicaid" box in person's column.</p>	<p>6b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Medicaid</p>	
<p>c. Anyone else?</p>	<p>Y (Reask 6b and c) N</p>	
<p>7a. Does anyone in the family now have a _____ card which looks like this? Show Medicaid card.</p>	<p>Y N (8)</p>	
<p>b. Who is this? Mark "Card" box in person's column.</p>	<p>7b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Card</p>	
<p>c. Anyone else?</p>	<p>Y (Reask 7b and c) N</p>	
<p>If "Card," ask:</p>		
<p>d. May I please see ---'s (and ---) card(s)? Mark appropriate box(es) in person's column.</p>		<p>d. Medicaid card seen 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Current 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Expired 3 <input type="checkbox"/> No card seen 4 <input type="checkbox"/> Other card seen (Specify: _____)</p>
<p>8a. During the past 12 months, has anyone in the family received health care provided or paid for by the Veterans Administration?</p>	<p>Y N (9)</p>	
<p>b. Who was this? Mark "VA" box in person's column.</p>	<p>8b. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> VA</p>	
<p>c. Anyone else?</p>	<p>Y (Reask 8b and c) N</p>	

1 Question 6 refers to the receipt of health care during the past 12 months which has been or will be paid for by a public medical assistance program for persons in need. In most States, this program is known as "Medicaid." However, in some States, the program is known by a name other than "Medicaid." If you are interviewing in one of these States, include the parenthetical phrase and insert that State's name for the program from your Medicaid card list. For example, in California you would say "In this state it is called Medical. Use "Medicaid" at the end of the question if no other term is appropriate.

If "Yes" in 6a, ask questions 6b and c and mark the "Medicaid" box in the appropriate columns. Reask 6b and c until you receive a final "No."

- 2 Ask question 7 regardless of the answers to question 6. Show the respondent the sample Medicaid card for the State in which you are interviewing.

In some States persons participating in certain health care programs may have cards which identify them as being eligible for Medicaid but are different from the card you show them. If a person has such a card consider this a "Yes" response.

Ask to see the Medicaid cards for all persons with the "Card" box marked in question 7b. Insert the names of the persons so that the respondent need make only one trip to get the cards.

- a If you are shown a Medicaid card, mark the "Medicaid Card Seen" box in 7d in that person's column. Refer to the expiration date on the Medicaid card and also mark "Current" or "Expired" based on the date of interview. A card is considered "current" until the end of the day listed, or through the last day of the month listed if no day is specified. Mark the "Expired" box if the date or month on the card has passed.
 - b Mark the "No card seen" box if the respondent does not show you a card for a person with "card" marked in 7b.
 - c If the card you are shown is not a Medicaid card, or if the card shows eligibility for Medicaid but is different from your sample card, mark the "Other card seen" box. Footnote the type of card and the expiration date, if any. Do not ask again for a Medicaid card.
 - d If you are shown a Medicaid card from a State other than the one in which this family now resides, do not mark a box but footnote this information and specify in the footnote whether the card is current or expired.
- 3 Question 8 refers to the receipt of medical care during the past 12 months which was provided or paid for by the Veterans Administration. Complete this question in the same manner as questions 4-6.

NOTE: The important thing to remember in questions 4-6 and 8 is the receipt of health care paid for by these programs, not whether or not the person is eligible for the care or has coverage.

Question 9, Height and Weight

9

9

Mark box or ask:		<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
9a. About how tall is -- without shoes? -----	9a. _____ Feet _____ Inch.	
b. About how much does -- weigh without shoes? -----	b. _____ Pounds	

- 1 Obtain height in feet and inches, using a dash if appropriate. Fractions are acceptable in the inches category. For example, 5 feet, 4½ inches.
- 2 If a person's weight is currently more or less than usual because of a temporary condition, such as pregnancy record the present weight and footnote the situation.

10

Question 10, Education

10

Mark box or ask:		<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
10a. What is the highest grade or year -- attended in school? -----	10a.	<input type="checkbox"/> None (NP)
		Elem: 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
		High: 9 10 11 12
		College: 1 2 3 4 5 6+
b. Did -- finish the -- grade (year)? -----	b.	1 Y 2 N

- 1 Circle only one number to indicate the highest grade or year attended regardless of "skipped" or "repeated" grades.
- 2 Regular School - Count only grades attended in a regular school where persons are given formal education in graded public or private schools, whether day or night school, and whether attendance was full time or part time. A "regular" school is one which advances a person toward an elementary or high school diploma or a college, university or professional school degree.
 - a If the respondent tells you he did graduate from high school but "they only had 11 years of school back then," ask if he received a high school diploma. If "Yes," circle the "12" opposite "High" and circle "Y" in 10b. If "No," circle the "11" opposite "High" and circle "Y" in 10b.
 - b If a person volunteers that he completed college in less than four years and he obtained a degree (graduated), circle "4" opposite "College" and circle "Y" in 10b. If the person did not graduate or receive a college degree, enter the actual number of years he attended college in question 10b, and mark accordingly.
 - c If a person volunteers that he completed four years of college but did not get a degree because he was enrolled in five-year program, such as engineering, circle "4" opposite "College" in question 10a and "Y" in question 10b. If a person completed the fifth year of a five-year degree program and received a bachelor's degree, then circle "5" opposite "College" in question 10a and "Y" in 10b.

d Also, persons may attend professional schools (law, medicine, dentistry) after less than four years of college. When the respondent answers in terms of these schools, obtain the equivalent in college years. For nurses, ask to determine the exact grade attended. If a nurse received her training in a college, determine grade attended in college. However, if training was received at a nurses school or hospital training school and did not advance the person towards a regular college degree, determine grade attended at the last regular school.

3 Nonregular School - Do not count education or training received in nonregular schools, such as vocational, trade or business schools, outside the regular school system. For example, do not count barber colleges, beautician schools, citizenship schools, and dancing schools; likewise, do not count training received "on the job," or service sponsored or correspondence school training unless it is given by a regular school and is credited toward a school diploma or college degree.

4 Junior High School - If the highest grade a person has attended is in a junior high school, determine the number of years attended and record the grade as if it has been in a school system with eight years of elementary school and four years of high school.

5 Postgraduate Schooling - For persons who have attended postgraduate high school but have not attended a regular college, circle the "12" opposite "High."

For those with postgraduate college training, circle the "5" or "6+," as appropriate, opposite "College."

6 Other School Systems - If the person attended school in a foreign country, in an ungraded school, under a tutor, or under other special circumstances, give the nearest equivalent of his highest grade attended or the number of years of attendance.

7 No Schooling - For persons who have not attended school at all, mark the "None" box.

8 Question 10b, Grade (Year) Finished

a If a person completed only a half year or failed to "pass" the grade, circle "N." Also circle "N" for a person who is currently enrolled in the regular school system. For example, a 17-year-old boy enrolled in the fourth year of high school would have "12" circled opposite "High" in question 10a, but since he would not yet have completed this grade, circle "N" in question 10b.

b For a person with "6+" circled opposite "College" in question 10a who has gone through two or more postgraduate academic college years, circle "Y" in question 10b without asking the question.

Question 11, Racial Background

<p style="text-align: center;">(11)</p> <p>Hand Card R Mark box or ask:</p> <p>11a. Please give me the number of the group or groups which describes --'s racial background.</p> <p>Circle all that apply.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 - Alaskan Native or American Indian 2 - Asian or Pacific Islander 3 - Black 4 - White 5 - Another group not listed - Please specify. <hr style="border-top: 1px dashed black;"/> <p>If multiple entries ask:</p> <p>b. Which of those groups, that is, (entries in 11a) would you say BEST describes --'s racial background?</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">(11)</p> <p>11a. <input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)</p> <p style="text-align: center;">1 2 3 4 5 7</p> <hr style="border-top: 1px solid black;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">(Specify)</p> <hr style="border-top: 1px solid black;"/> <p>b. 1 2 3 4 5 7</p> <hr style="border-top: 1px solid black;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">Specify</p>
---	--

Statistics on racial background will be used in relating volume of doctor visits, dental visits, hospitalizations, and other health variables to the various racial and cultural groups of this country.

Hand the respondent Flashcard R and ask question 11a. Do not suggest a precode or category to the respondent and do not try to explain or define any of the groups.

- 1 Enter all response given in answer to 11a. If the respondent does not give a number but gives an answer that is exactly the same as one listed, circle the appropriate code. If the answer is not exactly the same as one on the card, circle "5" and write the verbatim response on the "specify" line.

- 2 If you get a response that appears to contradict your original observed race classification of the household, do not change your original entry. Question 1 is designed for respondent identification of the person's racial background.

- 3 If multiple responses are given in 11a, ask 11b to determine the person's MAIN racial background. If the respondent cannot answer the first time you ask the question, do NOT reask and do not pursue the matter any further. Enter "DK" in the answer space in that person's column. If the respondent gives more than one category in 11b, enter all responses.

12

Question 12, National Origin or Ancestry

12

Hand Card O Mark box or ask:		G _ Unzer +7 4 =
12a. Are any of those groups --'s national origin or ancestry? (Where did --'s ancestors come from?)	12a.	1 Y 2 N (N/P)
b. Please give me the number of the group. Circle all that apply.	b.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
1 - Puerto Rican	5 - Mexican-American	
2 - Cuban	6 - Chicano	
3 - Mexican	7 - Other Latin American	
4 - Mexicano	8 - Other Spanish	

Ask question 12 to obtain more detailed information about persons of Spanish background. The term "national origin or ancestry" refers to the national or cultural group from which the person is descended. A person may report his origin based on the origin of a parent, a grandparent, or some far-removed ancestor.

1 Hand the respondent Card O and ask question 12a. If the respondent does not understand the question, read the probe on the questionnaire.

Circle "N" if the respondent says "no" without any explanations or qualifiers. If the response is a group not listed on the card, enter this in the answer space and go to the next person.

2 If the response to 12a is "Yes," ask 12b and circle the code(s) of the category(ies) selected by the respondent. If the respondent gives you a name which is exactly the same as on the card, such as "Mexican," circle the appropriate code.

3 Do not change any previous answers based on information reported in question 12. This question is designed for respondent identification of the person's national origin or ancestry.

4 If you are questioned as to why we are asking only about Spanish ancestry, say that we collect information on different cultural groups at different times.

Question 13, Work Status in Past Two Weeks

13

13

Mark box or ask:			<input type="checkbox"/> Under 17 (NP)
13a. Did -- work at any time last week or the week before -- not counting work around the house?	13a.	1 Y (14)	2 N
b. Even though -- did not work during these 2 weeks, does he have a job or business?	b.	1 Y	2 N
c. Was he looking for work or on layoff from a job?	c.	1 Y	2 N (14)
d. Which -- looking for work or on layoff from a job?	d.	1 <input type="checkbox"/> Looking	2 <input type="checkbox"/> Layoff

- 1 Question 13a, Worked Last Week or Week Before - Ask question 13a for each person 17 years old or over. Circle "Y" in 13a for a person who worked at any time last week or the week before, even for an hour.
 - a Work - Paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary, commission or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters, or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also, include work in the person's own business, professional practice or farm and work without pay in a business or farm run by a related household member.
 - b Exclude work around the house and volunteer or unpaid work, such as for church, Red Cross, or charity, and service in the Armed Forces.

- 2 Question 12b, With a Job or Business - A person who was temporarily absent from his job or business all of last week and the week before because of vacation, bad weather, labor dispute, or personal reasons, such as illness or maternity leave, but who expects to return when these events are ended, are considered as having a job or business. Circle "Y" for a person who says that he has a new job which he has not yet started, but enter a footnote, "New job - not yet started."
 - a Job - A definite arrangement with one or more employers to work for pay, full time or part time.
 - b On Call - Do not consider a person "on call" to work only when his services are needed as having a job during weeks when he does not work; for example, a substitute teacher who did not work last week or the week before.
 - c Seasonal - Consider seasonal employment as a job only during the season and not during the off-season.
 - d Business - A person has his own business (including a farm operation or professional practice) if he does one of the following:
 - 1) Maintains an office, store, or other place of business.
 - 2) Uses machinery or equipment in which he has invested money for profit.

13

Work Status in Past Two Weeks (Continued)

13

- 3) Advertises his business or profession by a listing in the classified section of the phone book, a display sign or distributes cards or leaflets publicizing the place.

3 Questions 13c and d, Looking for Work or on Layoff - A person who is not working but considers himself as having a job may actually be on temporary layoff or looking for a job, and we want to identify such persons:

- a Looking for Work - Any effort to get a job or to establish a business or profession. A person was looking for work if he actually tried to find work during the past two weeks and also, if he made such efforts within the past 60 days, and was waiting during the past two weeks to hear the results of these earlier efforts. Some examples of looking for work are: Registering at an employment office; visiting, telephoning, or writing applications to prospective employers; placing or answering advertisements for a job; and being "on call" at a personnel office or at a union hiring hall, etc.
- b Layoff - Waiting to be called back to a job from which he has been temporarily laid off or furloughed. Layoffs can be due to slack work, plant retooling or remodeling, seasonal factors, and the like. If a person was not working because of a labor dispute at his own place of employment, he is not considered "on layoff" but with a job from which he is absent.

Question 14, Industry, Occupation, and Class of Worker

14a. For whom did -- work? Name of company, business, organization, or other employer	14a. Employer
b. What kind of business or industry is this? For example, TV and radio manufacturing, retail shoe store, State Labor Dept., farm	b. Industry
c. What kind of work was -- doing? For example, electrical engineer, stock clerk, typist, farmer	c. Occupation
d. What were --'s most important activities or duties? For example, types, keeps account books, files, sells cars, operates printing press, finishes concrete	d. Duties
<p>Complete from entries in 14a-d; if not clear, ask:</p> <p>e. Was -- an employee of PRIVATE company, business, or individual for wages, salary, or commission? P -- a FEDERAL government employee? F -- a STATE government employee? S -- a LOCAL government employee? L -- self-employed in OWN business, professional practice, or farm? If not a farm, ask: Is the business incorporated? Yes I No (or farm) SE -- working WITHOUT PAY in family business or farm? WP -- NEVER WORKED. NEV</p>	<p>Class of worker</p> <p>e. 1 <input type="checkbox"/> P 5 <input type="checkbox"/> I 2 <input type="checkbox"/> F 6 <input type="checkbox"/> SE 3 <input type="checkbox"/> S 7 <input type="checkbox"/> WP 4 <input type="checkbox"/> L 8 <input type="checkbox"/> NEV</p>

- 1 Ask questions 14a through 14e for all persons with "Y" circled in any one of questions 13a, b, or c.
- 2 For persons who worked during the past two weeks ("Yes" to question 13a) or are with a job but not at work ("Yes" to question 13b), these questions are about the present job. If a person worked at or has more than one job, these questions refer to the job at which he spends the most time. If equal time is spent at each job, it refers to the one the respondent considers most important or has had the longest period of time.
- 3 If a person is looking for work, on layoff from a job, or has a new job to begin in the near future, question 14 refers to his last "full-time" job or business lasting two consecutive weeks or longer. If he has never had a full-time civilian job or business lasting two consecutive weeks or longer, enter "Never worked" in question 14a, skip to 14e and mark the "NEV" box. A "full-time" job is one at which the person worked 35 or more hours per week.

4 Question 14a, Name of Employer - Enter the name of the company, business, government agency, or other employer. Do not use abbreviations in question 14a unless that is all the respondent can give you for the name of the employer. For persons who work for employers without company names, such as a farm, a dentist or lawyer's office, etc., write the name of the owner. Persons working for various private employers, such as baby sitters, domestics, etc., should be reported as "private families."

14a

Industry, Occupation, and Class of Worker (Continued)

14a

- a Government - For employees of a government agency, record the specific organization and state whether the organization is Federal (U.S.), State, county, etc. For example, U.S. Treasury Department, State Highway Police, City Tax Office, etc. It is not sufficient to report merely U.S. Government for Police Dept., etc.
- b Self-employed - If the person for whom you are obtaining the information is self-employed, ask if the place of business or establishment has a name (such as Twin City Barber Shop, Capitol Construction, etc.), and write it in 14a. If there is no business name, write "self-employed," "own business," etc.

14b

5 Question 14b, Kind of Business of Industry - Do not repeat the name of the employer in this entry. Question 14b should tell clearly and specifically what the company or business does at the location where the person works.

14b

- a In order to give a clear and exact description of the industry, the entry must state or indicate both a general and a specific function for the employer; for example, copper mine, fountain pen manufacturer, wholesale grocery, retail bookstore, road construction, shoe repair service. The words mine, manufacturer, wholesale, retail, construction, and repair service show the general function. The words fountain pen, grocery, bookstore, road, and shoe indicate the specific function.
- b Avoid Use of the Word "Company" - Do not use the word "company" in this entry. It does not give useful information. If the respondent reports that he works for a metal furniture company, ask "Do they manufacture or do they just sell it?" If they just sell it, ask "Do they sell to other stores (which would be wholesale) or to individuals (which would be retail)?" Accordingly, in such a case the possible replies would be "furniture manufacturer," "furniture wholesaler," or "furniture retailer." Note that where possible, you should specify for furniture manufacturers the major material used--wood, metal, plastic, etc., but for the selling operation, it is not necessary, since furniture wholesalers and retailers very often sell various types.
- c Multiple Activity Business - Some firms carry on more than one kind of business or industrial activity. If the activities are carried on at the same location, describe only the major activity of the establishment. For example, employees in a retail salesroom, located at the factory of a company primarily engaged in the manufacturing of men's clothing, should be reported as working in "Men's clothing manufacturing."

14b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14b

- 1) If the different activities are carried on at separate locations, describe the activity where the person works. For example, report a coal mine owned by a large steel manufacturer as "coal mine;" report the separate paint factory of a large chemical manufacturer as "paint manufacturing."
 - 2) A few specified activities, when carried on at separate locations, are exceptions to the above. Record the activity of the parent organization for research laboratories, warehouses, repair shops, and storage garages, when these kinds of establishments exist primarily to serve their own parent organizations rather than the public or other organizations. For example, if a retail department store has a separate warehouse for its own use, the entry for the warehouse employees should be "retail department store" rather than "warehouse."
- d Distinguish Among Manufacturing, Wholesale, Retail and Service - It is essential to distinguish among manufacturing, wholesale, retail, and service companies. Even though a manufacturing plant sells its products in large lots to other manufacturers, wholesalers, or retailers, it should be reported as a manufacturing company. Use the following as a guide:
- 1) A wholesale establishment buys, rather than makes, products in large quantities for resale to retailers, industrial users, or to other wholesalers.
 - 2) A retailer sells primarily to individual consumers or users but seldom makes products.
 - 3) Establishments which render services to individuals and to organizations such as, hotels, laundries, cleaning and dyeing shops, advertising agencies, and automobile repair shops are engaged in providing services. Report these as retailers but show the type of services provided, for example, TV and radio repair.
- e Manufacturers' Sales Offices - Record a separate sales office set up by a manufacturing firm to sell to other business organizations and located away from the factory or headquarters of the firm as "(product) manufacturers' sales office." For example, a St. Louis shoe factory has a sales office in Chicago; "shoe manufacturer's sales office" is the correct entry for workers in the Chicago office.
- f Government Organization - Usually the name of the government agency is adequate, for example, U.S. Census Bureau, City Fire Department.

- 1) If the activity of the government agency is absolutely clear, the name of the agency is sufficient. In such cases, enter "Same as above" in 14b. However, sometimes the names of government agencies are not fully descriptive of their business or activity. A correct entry in 14b for a County Highway Commission might be one or any combination of the following: "County road building," "county road repair," "county contracting for road building (or repair)." For State Liquor Control Board, the correct entry might be "State licensing of liquor sales" or "State liquor retailer."
- 2) If the business or main activity of a government employer is not clear, you should ask in what part of the organization the person works and then report that activity. For example, for a City Department of Public Works, a correct entry might be one of the following: "City street repair," "city garbage collection," "city sewage disposal" or "city water supply."

g Persons Who Do Not Work at One Specific Location - Some people's work is done "on the spot" rather than in a specific store, factory, or office. In these cases, report the employer for whom they work in item 14a and the employer's business or industry in 14b. Among those who normally work at different locations at different times are Census interviewers, building painters, and refrigeration mechanics. Their industry entries might be U.S. Census Bureau, building contractor, or refrigeration repair service. For example, a local retail chain is doing remodeling of several stores, one at a time. They have a contract with a building contractor to furnish a small crew each day for the several months needed to do the work. Even though these people report to a retail store each day, they work for the building contractor.

h Business in Own Homes - Some people carry on businesses in their own homes. Report these businesses as if they were carried on in regular stores or shops. For example, dressmaking shop, lending library, retail antique furniture store, insurance agency, piano teaching, boarding house, rest home, boarding children (for a foster home), etc.

i Domestic and Other Private Household Workers - When the name of a single individual is given as the employer, find out whether the person works at a place of business or in a private home. The proper industry entry for a domestic worker employed in the home of another person is "private home." For a person cleaning a doctor's office which is in the doctor's own home, the proper entry is "doctor's office." This also applies to others, such as dentists or lawyers.

14b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14b

- j Examples of Adequate Entries for Question 14b - The following are examples of inadequate and adequate entries for kind of business and industry (question 14b). Study them carefully and refer to them periodically to familiarize yourself with the types of entries that are proper and adequate.

Inadequate

Adequate

Agency	Collection agency, advertising agency, real estate agency, employment agency, travel agency, insurance agency.
Aircraft components Aircraft parts	Airplane engine parts factory, propeller manufacturing, electronic instruments factory, wholesale aircraft parts, etc.
Auto or automobile components Auto or automobile parts	Auto clutch manufacturing, wholesale auto accessories, automobile tire manufacturing, retail sales and installation of mufflers, battery factory, etc.
Bakery	Bakery plant (makes and sells to wholesalers, retail stores, restaurants, or home delivery), wholesale bakery (buys from manufacturer and sells to grocers, restaurants, hotels, etc.), retail bakery (sells only on premises to private individuals but may bake its own goods on premises).
Box factory	Paper box factory, wooden box factory, metal box factory.
City or city government	City Street Repair Department, City Board of Health, City Board of Education.
Private club	Golf club, fraternal club, night club, residence club.
Coal company	Coal mine, retail coal yard, wholesale coal yard.
Credit company	Credit rating service, loan service, retail clothing store (sometimes called a credit company).

InadequateAdequate

Dairy	Dairy farm, dairy depot, dairy bar, <u>wholesale</u> dairy products, <u>retail</u> dairy products, dairy products <u>manufacturing</u> .
Discount house Discount store	Retail drug store, retail electrical appliances, retail general merchandise, retail clothing store, etc.
Electrical components manufacturer Electrical parts manufacturer Electronic components manufacturer Electronic parts manufacturer	Electronic tube factory, memory core manufacturing, transistor factory, manufacturer tape readers, etc.
Engineering company	Engineering consulting firm, general contracting, wholesale heating equipment, construction machinery factory.
Express company	Motor freight, railway express agency, railroad car rental (for Union Tank Car Company, etc.), armored car service.
Factory, mill or plant	Steel rolling mill, hardware factory, aircraft factory, flour mill, hosiery mill, commercial printing plant.
Foundry	Iron foundry, brass foundry, aluminum foundry.
Freight company	Motor freight, air freight, railway, water transportation, etc.
Fur company	Fur dressing plant, fur garment factory, retail fur store, wholesale fur, fur repair shop.
Laundry	<p>a. Own home laundry (for a person doing laundry for pay in her own home).</p> <p>b. Laundering for private family (for a person working in the home of a private family).</p> <p>c. Commercial laundry (for a person working in a steam laundry, hand laundry, Chinese laundry, French laundry, or similar establishment).</p>

14b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14b

Inadequate

Adequate

	c. Self-service laundry (for a person working in an establishment where the customer brings her own laundry and pays a fee to use the washing machine or other equipment).
Lumber company	Sawmill, retail lumber yard, planing mill, logging camp, wholesale lumber, lumber manufacturer.
Manufacturer's agent Manufacturer's representative	Specify product being sold, such as jewelry manufacturer's representative, lumber manufacturer's agent, electric appliance manufacturer's representative, chemical manufacturer's agent, etc.
Mine	Coal mine, gold mine, bauxite mine, iron mine, copper mine, lead mine, marble quarry, sand and gravel pit.
Nylon or rayon factory	Nylon or rayon chemical factory (where chemicals are made into fibers); nylon or rayon textile mill (where fibers are made into yarn or woven into cloth); women's nylon hosiery factory (where yarn is made into hosiery); rayon dress manufacturing (where cloth is made into garments).
Office	Dentist's office, physician's office, public stenographer's office.
Oil company Oil industry Oil plant	Oil drilling, petroleum refinery, retail gasoline station, petroleum pipeline, wholesale oil distributor, retail fuel oil.
Packing house	Meat packing plant, fruit cannery, fruit packing shed (wholesale packers and shippers).
Pipeline	Natural gas pipeline, gasoline pipeline, petroleum pipeline, pipeline construction.
Plastic factory	Plastic materials factory (where plastic materials are made), plastic products plant (where articles are actually manufactured from plastic materials).

14b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14b

Inadequate

Adequate

Public utility

Electric light and power utility, gas utility, telephone company, water supply utility. If the company provides more than one service, specify the services; such as gas and electric utility, electric and water utility.

Railroad car shop

Railroad car factory, railroad repair shop, street railroad repair shop.

Repair shop

Shoe repair shop, radio repair shop, blacksmith shop, welding shop, auto repair shop, machine repair shop.

Research

- a. Permanent-press dresses (product of the company for which research is done, when the company or organization does research for its own use), Brandeis University (name of university at which research is done for its own use), St. Elizabeth's Hospital (name of hospital at which medical research is done for its own use).
- b. Commercial research (if research is the main service which the company sells, and the research is done under contract to another company).
- c. National Geographic, Cancer Association, Brookings Institution (name of the nonprofit organization).

School

City elementary school, private kindergarten, private college, State university. Distinguish between public and private, including parochial, and identify the highest level of instruction provided, such as junior college, senior high school.

Tailor shop

Dry cleaning shop (provides valet service), custom tailor shop (makes clothes to customer's order), men's retail clothing store.

Terminal

Bus terminal, railroad terminal, boat terminal, airport.

Textile mill

Cotton cloth mill, woolen cloth mill, cotton yarn mill, nylon thread mill.

14b

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14b

Inadequate

Adequate

Transportation
company

Motor trucking, moving and storage, water
transportation, air transportation, airline,
taxicab service, subway, elevated railway,
railroad, petroleum pipeline, car loading
service.

Water company

Water supply irrigation system, water filtration
plant.

Well

Oil drilling, oil well, salt well, water well.

14c

6

Questions 14c and 14d, Kind of Work - The answer in question 14c should describe clearly and specifically the kind of work or nature of duties performed by the person. The answer in question 14d should tell you the person's most important activities or duties. Often, the response to question 14d together with the response to question 14c, will give you the information needed to make the person's occupation description complete, and thus, adequate.

14c

- a How to Ask - Ask question 14c as worded, record the respondent's answer, and then ask question 14d. When the combination of entries in both questions 14c and 14d does not give you an adequate description of the person's occupation, ask additional probing questions for question 14c until the total combined information adequately describes the person's job. If you cannot confine your entry to the space provided, continue in the notes section.
- b Examples of Combined Entries - The following example is provided to help clarify the use of the combined information in 14c and 14d.

<u>Inadequate</u>	<u>Adequate</u>		<u>Adequate</u>
14c - Mechanic	14c - Mechanic	OR	14c - Mechanic, auto body repairman
14d - Repairs cars	14d - Fixes dents, replaces fenders and other repairs to auto bodies		14d - Repairs cars

In this case it is important to distinguish between the person who works on auto bodies from the person who does automobile engine repair work. Either of the above adequate combined responses does that.

14c

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14c

- c Examples of Adequate Entries for Question 14c - The following are examples of inadequate and adequate job entries. If the combined entries for questions 14c and 14d provide the kind of information shown in the listing of adequate examples, accept them as being adequate.

InadequateAdequate

Accounting Accounting work	Certified public accountant, accountant, accounting machine operator, tax auditor, accounts-payable clerk, etc.
Adjuster	Brake aduster, machine adjuster, merchandise complaint adjuster, insurance adjuster.
Agent	Freight agent, insurance agent, sales agent, advertising agent, purchasing agent.
Analyst Analyzer	Cement analyst, food analyst, budget analyst, computer-systems analyst, etc.
Caretaker or custodian	Servant, janitor, guard, building superintendent, gardener, groundskeeper, sexton, property clerk, locker attendant, vault attendant.
Claim examiner Claim investigator Claims adjuster Claims analyst Claims authorizer	Unemployment benefits claims taker, insurance adjuster, right-of-way claims agent, merchandise complaint adjuster, etc.
Clerical Clerical work Clerk	Stock clerk, shipping clerk, sales clerk. A person who sells goods in a store is a salesman or <u>sales clerk</u> —do not report them merely as a clerk.
Data processing	Computer programmer, data typist, key punch operator, computer operator, coding clerk, card tape converter operator.
Doctor	Physician, dentist, veterinarian, osteopath, chiropractor.
Engineer	Civil engineer, locomotive engineer, mechanical engineer, stationary engineer, aeronautical engineer.
Entertainer	Singer, dancer, acrobat, musician.

14c

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14c

Inadequate

Adequate

Equipment operator

Road grader operator, bulldozer operator, trencher operator.

Factory worker

Electric motor assembler, forge heater, turret lathe operator, weaver, loom fixer, knitter, stitcher, punch-press operator, spray painter, riveter.

Farmworker

Farmer - for the owner, operator, tenant or share cropper who is self-employed. Farm manager - for the person hired to manage a farm for someone else.

Farm foreman - for the person who supervises a group of farm hands or helpers.

Farmhand or farm helper - for those who do general farmwork.

Fruit picker or cotton chopper are examples of persons who do a particular kind of farmwork.

When the place of work is a ranch, indicate specifically rancher, ranch manager, ranch foreman, and ranch hand or helper, as shown above in the case for similar types of farmworkers.

Fireman

Locomotive fireman, city fireman (city fire department), fire fighter, stationary fireman, fire boss.

Foreman

Specify the craft or activity involved, as foreman carpenter, foreman truck driver.

Graphic arts

Illustrator, commercial artist, poster artist, art layout man, etc.

Group leader

Group leader on assembly line, harvest crew boss, clerical group leader, labor gang leader, recreation group leader, etc.

14c

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14c

InadequateAdequateHeavy equipment
operatorSpecify the type of equipment, such as:
Clam-shovel operator, derrick operator,
monorail crane operator, dragline operator,
Euclid operator, etc.

Helper

Baker's helper, carpenter's helper, janitor's
helper, etc.IBM clerk
IBM machine operator
IBM operatorIBM card puncher, IBM tabulator, sorting
machine operator, proof machine operator, etc.

Interior decorator

Be sure that entries in question 4c differentiate
between the interior decorator who plans and
designs interiors for homes, hotels, etc., and
those who paint, paperhang, etc.

Investigator

Insurance claim investigator, income tax
investigator, financial examiner, detective,
social welfare investigator, etc.

Laborer

Sweeper, charwoman, baggage porter, janitor,
stevedore, window washer, car cleaner, section
hand, hand trucker.

Layout man

Pattern-maker, sheet-metal worker, compositor,
commercial artist, structural steel worker,
boilermaker, draftsman, coppersmith.

Maintenance man

Groundskeeper, janitor, carpenter, electrician.

Mechanic

Auto mechanic, dental mechanic, radio mechanic,
airplane mechanic, office machine mechanic.

Nun

Specify the type of work done, if possible, as
housekeeper, art teacher, organist, cook,
laundress, registered nurse.Nurse
NursingRegistered nurse, nursemaid, practical nurse,
nurse's aide, student, professional nurse.Office clerk
Office work
Office workerTypist, secretary, receptionist, comptometer
operator, file clerk, bookkeeper, physician's
attendant.

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

Inadequate

Adequate

Program analyst	Computing-systems analyst, procedure analyst, vocational director, manufacturing liaison planner, etc.
Program specialist	Program scheduler, data-processing-systems supervisor, metal-flow coordinator, etc.
Programmer	Computer programmer, electronics data programmer, radio or TV program director, senior computer programmer, production planner, etc.
Research Research and development Research and testing Research assistant Research associate Research specialist Research work	Specify field of research, as research physicist, research chemist, research mathematician, research biologist, etc. Also, if associate or assistant, research associate chemist, assistant research physicist, research associate geologist, etc.
Salesman	Advertising salesman, insurance salesman, bond salesman, canvasser, driver-salesman (routeman), fruit peddler, newsboy.
Scientist	Specify field, for example, political scientist, physicist, sociologist, home economist, oceanographer, soil scientist, etc.
Specialist	If the word specialist is reported as part of a job title, be sure to include a brief description of the actual duties in question 14d. For example, for a "transportation specialist" the actual duties might be any one of the following: "Gives cost estimates of trips," "plans trips or tours," "conducts tours," "schedules trains," or "does economic analysis of transportation industry."
Shipping department	What does the worker <u>himself</u> do? Shipping and receiving clerk, crater picker, typist, wraps parcels, etc.

InadequateAdequate

Supervisor

Typing supervisor, chief bookkeeper, steward, kitchen supervisor, buyer, cutting and sewing forelady, sales instructor, route foreman.

Systems analyst
Systems specialist

Computing-systems analyst, contract coordinator-manufacturer, production planner, etc.

Teacher

Teachers should report the level of school they teach and the subject. Those below high school who teach many subjects may just report level. College teachers should report title. Following are some illustrations:

<u>Level</u>	<u>Subject</u>
Preschool	-
Kindergarten	-
Elementary	-
Elementary	Music
Junior High	English
High School	Physical Ed.
College	Mathematics (Professor)

Technician

Medical laboratory technician, dental laboratory technician, X-ray technician.

Tester

Cement tester, instrument tester, engine tester, battery tester.

Trucker

Truck driver, trucking contractor, electric trucker, hand trucker.

Works in stock room,
bakery, office, etc.

Names of departments or places of work are unsatisfactory. The entry must specify what the worker himself does; for example, "shipping clerk" or "truck loader," not "works in shipping department;" "cost accountant" or "filing clerk," not "works in cost control."

- d Occupation of the Self-employed - When a person is self-employed, ask the occupation question: "What kind of work was -- doing?" Do not enter proprietor as the occupation unless the person actually spends most of his time in the management of the business. If the person spends most of his time in his trade or craft, record that as his occupation, that is, shoe repairman, beautician, or carpenter, as the case may be.

14c

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14c

- e Caution on Occupations of Young Persons - Professional, technical, and skilled occupations usually require lengthy periods of training or education which a young person normally cannot have. Upon further inquiry, you may find that the young person is really only a trainee, apprentice, or helper (for example, accountant trainee, electrician trainee, apprentice electrician, electrician's helper).
- f Unusual Occupations - You may encounter occupations which sound strange to you. Accept such entries if the respondent is sure the title is correct. For example, "sand hog" is the title for a certain worker engaged in the construction of underwater tunnels, and "printer's devil" is sometimes used for an apprentice printer. Where these or any other unusual occupation titles are entered, add a few words of description if the combined entries do not clarify the response.
- 1) Apprentice Versus Trainee - An "apprentice" is under contract during his training period but a "trainee" is not. Include both the occupation and the word "apprentice" or "trainee," as the case may be, in the description, for example, apprentice plumber, buyer trainee.
 - 2) Baby Sitter Versus Boarding Children - A baby sitter usually cares for children in the home of her employer. Where the children are cared for in the worker's home, the occupation is "boarding children."
 - 3) Contractor Versus Skilled Worker - A "contractor" is engaged principally in obtaining building or other contracts and supervising the work. Classify a skilled worker who works with his own tools as a carpenter, plasterer, plumber, electrician, and the like, even though he hires others to work for him.
 - 4) Housekeeper (Paid) Versus Housemaid - A "paid housekeeper" employed in a private home for wages has the full responsibility for the management of the household. A housemaid (general housework), hired girl, or kitchen maid does not.
 - 5) Interior Decorator Versus Painter or Paperhanger - An "interior decorator" designs the decoration plans for an interior of homes, hotels, offices, etc., and supervises the placement of the furniture and other decorations. A house painter or paperhanger only does painting or hangs paper.

14c

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14c

- 6) Machinist Versus Mechanic or Machine Operator - A "machinist" is a skilled craftsman who constructs metal parts, tools, and machines through the use of blue prints, machine and hand tools, and precise measuring instruments. A "mechanic" inspects, services, repairs, or overhauls machinery. A "machine operator" operates a factory machine (drill press operator, winder, etc.).
- 7) Secretary Versus Official Secretary - Use the title "secretary" for secretarial work in an office; report a secretary who is an elected or appointed officer of a business, lodge, or other organization as an "official" secretary.
- 8) Names of Departments or Places of Work - Occupation entries which give only the name of the department or a place of work are unsatisfactory. Examples of such unsatisfactory entries are "works in warehouse," "works in shipping department," "works in cost control." The occupation entry must tell what the worker himself does, not what his department does.

14d

g Importance of Question 14d - The responses to the activity question, question 14d, are very important for coding purposes. Although the question may seem redundant in some cases, the responses often permit more accurate coding of the occupation. We cannot provide you with a complete list showing when an activity response together with the job title is adequate or when additional probing is necessary. However, we would like to stress the importance of the activity question in providing more detail even though it may not appear to. Here are some examples showing the value of question 14d:

14d

14c - Telephone Co. serviceman	14c - Telephone Co. serviceman
14d - Installs phones in homes	14d - Repairs telephone transmission lines

Both of these examples are an adequate combination of responses. However, with the additional information obtained from item 14d, the two responses identify different occupations even though the responses to question 4c are the same. These two telephone company servicemen will be assigned different occupation codes.

14c - Bookkeeping	14c - Bookkeeper
14d - Keeping and balancing ledgers	14d - Operates a bookkeeping machine

Again, adequate responses are obtained in both, but on the basis of the detail provided by question 14d, these occupations will be coded in different categories.

14d

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14d

These two examples illustrate the importance of the activity question, question 14d, in obtaining adequate responses even though the question may seem repetitive.

14e

7 Question 14e, Class of Worker - For each person with entries in questions 14a-d, record the class of worker by marking one of the boxes in question 14e. The information given in answer to questions 14a-d will usually be sufficient for identifying "class of worker." If the information previously supplied is not adequate for this purpose, ask additional questions as necessary, for example, "Was he a local government employee?"

14e

- a Private-Paid - Mark "P" for work for a private employer for wages, salary or commissions. This includes also, compensation by tips, piece rates, or pay in kind, if received from a nongovernmental source, regardless of whether the source is a large corporation or a single individual. Include work for wages or salary for settlement houses, churches, unions, and other nonprofit organizations, such as Red Cross and U.S. Chamber of Commerce. Also, include work for private organizations doing contract work for State or local governments.
- b Government, Federal - Mark "F" for any branch of the Federal Government, including government-owned bus lines, government-owned electric power utilities, etc. Includes civilian employees of the Armed Forces and persons elected to paid federal offices. Mark "F" also for employees of international organizations, (for example, United Nations) and for employees of foreign governments, such as persons employed by the French Embassy or by the British Joint Services Mission. This rule applies only to those persons already listed in accordance with the instructions on whom to interview.
- c Government, State - Mark "S" for employees of State governments. This would include paid State officials, State police, and employees of State universities and colleges.
- d Government, Local - Mark "L" for employees of cities, towns, counties, and other local areas. Included here would be city owned bus lines, electric power companies, water and sewer services, etc. Employees of public elementary and secondary schools work for local governments. Since State Boards of Education often control subject content of schools and may also contribute money to the local areas for schools, some school employees think that they are State employees. But unless they work for a special school, such as for handicapped or experimental elementary school of the State University, they are in almost all cases local employees.

14e

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14e

- e Self-employed - Mark "SE" for persons working for profit or fees in OWN business, farm, shop, office, etc.
- 1) Include persons who have their own tools or equipment and provide services on a contract, subcontract, or job basis, such as carpenters, plumbers, taxicab operators, or truck operators.
 - 2) Exclude handymen, off job workers, superintendents, foremen, managers, or other executives hired to manage a business or farm, salesmen working for commission, and offices or corporations.
 - a) If, in reply to your question, the respondent indicates that the business or profession is incorporated, mark "I."
 - b) If, in reply to your question, the respondent indicates that the business or profession is not incorporated, mark "SE." Also mark the "SE" box if the business is a farm.

NOTE: However, if the operator of the family enterprise has a wage or salary job in addition to the family farm or business, mark "P" and not "I" or "SE" in question 14e.

- f Nonpaid - Mark "WP" for work WITHOUT PAY on a farm or unincorporated business operated by a related member of the household. Do not count room and board and a cash allowance as pay for these family workers; however, if the worker receives money which is definitely considered to be wages for work performed, mark "P."
- g Never Worked - Mark "NEV" for a person looking for work who never before held a full-time civilian job lasting two consecutive weeks or more.
- h Cautions Regarding Class-of-Worker Entries
- 1) Corporation Employees - Report employees of a corporation as employees of a private employer (except for a few cases of employees of government corporations, such as the Commodity Credit Corporation, who must be properly reported as Federal government employees). Do not report corporation employees as owning their business even though they may own part or all of the stock of the incorporated business. If a respondent says that a person is self-employed, and you find that the business is incorporated, mark the "I" box.

14e

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

14e

- 2) Domestic Work in Other Persons' Homes - Report maid, laundress, cook, or cleaning woman working in another person's home as working for a private employer.
 - 3) Partnerships - Report two or more persons who operate a business in partnership as self-employed in own business. The word "own" is not limited to one person.
 - 4) Public Utility Employees - Although public utilities (such as transportation, communication, electric light and power, gas, water, garbage collection, and sewage disposal facilities) are subject to government regulations, they are owned by either government or private organizations. Distinguish between government-operated and privately-owned organizations in recording class of worker for public utility employees.
 - 5) Work for Pay "In Kind" - Pay "in kind" includes room, board, supplies, and food, such as eggs or poultry on a farm. This is considered pay except for a member of the family. Report persons who work for pay "in kind" as employees of a private company or individual.
 - 6) Work on an Odd-job or Casual Basis - Report work on an odd-job or casual basis as work of an employee for a private company, business, or individual. For example, do not report the baby sitter employed in other peoples' households as self-employed.
 - 7) Clergymen and Nuns - Mark "P" for preachers, ministers, priests, rabbis, and other clergymen except in the following two cases:
 - a) Record a clergyman, such as a prison chaplain working in a civilian government job as a government employee—"F," "S," or "L" in question 14e.
 - b) Record a clergyman not attached to a particular congregation or church organization, who conducts religious services in various places on a fee basis, as self-employed in his own professional practice—"SE" in question 14e.
- Mark "P" for nuns who receive pay in kind.
- 8) Registered and Practical Nurses—Private Duty - Report registered nurses and practical nurses who report "private duty" for kind of business as "SE."

Industry, Occupation, Class of Worker (Continued)

- 9) PX (Post Exchange) Employees Versus Officer's Club, N.C.O. Club Employees, Etc. - Report persons working at a post exchange as "F." This nonprofit organization is controlled by government officials acting in their official capacity.
- 10) Foster Mothers and Child Care--Own Home - Report foster mothers and others who report their occupation as "child care" and industry as "own home" as "SE" class of worker. A foster mother and other persons who consider themselves as working for profit and who provide childcare facilities in their own homes are furnishing the shelter and meals for certain time periods and are to be considered as operating their own business.
- 11) Boarding House Keepers - Report boarding house keepers who consider themselves as working and who perform this work in their own homes as "Own home" for industry with "SE" class of worker. Report those who do this work for someone else for wages or salary or pay in kind as "boarding house" for industry with "P" class of worker.
- 12) Sales or Merchandise Employees - Report persons who own a sales franchise and are responsible for their own merchandise and personnel as "Retail or Wholesale Sales" for industry with "SE" class of worker. Report persons who do sales work for someone else (such as an Avon or Tupperware representative) as a "P" for class of worker. Also for such people, indicate whether they sell door-to-door or use the party plan method.
- 13) Post Office and TVA Employees - Report persons who work for the Post Office Department and Tennessee Valley Authority as federal employees and mark them as "F."
- 14) Comsat and Amtrak - Comsat and Amtrak are private companies and you should report the employees of these companies as "P."

Question 15, Family Income

15

15

Hand Card I					
15. Which of these income groups represents your total combined family income for the past 12 months - that is, yours, your -- s, etc.? Include income from all sources such as wages, salaries, social security or retirement benefits, help from relatives, rent from property, and so forth.	15.	00 <input type="checkbox"/> A	04 <input type="checkbox"/> E	08 <input type="checkbox"/>	
		01 <input type="checkbox"/> B	05 <input type="checkbox"/> F	09 <input type="checkbox"/>	
		02 <input type="checkbox"/> C	06 <input type="checkbox"/> G	10 <input type="checkbox"/>	
		03 <input type="checkbox"/> D	07 <input type="checkbox"/> H		

Income is important in statistics for separating families into groups that live differently. The way people in different income groups live often affects their health. For example, income indicates:

- a Differences in ability to obtain adequate health care.
- b Differences in ability to afford food for adequate diets to prevent diseases, such as malnutrition in children.

- 1 Ask question 15 once for a family to obtain the total combined income for all related household members during the past 12 months. Ask this question of each unrelated household member or group individually at the time he is interviewed. If the respondent does not or will not answer the question for some reason, enter the reason in a footnote.
 - a Hand Card I to the respondent, and then ask question 15.
 - b Read the income question just as it appears on the questionnaire. After you ask the income question, give the respondent enough time to prepare his estimate and mark the appropriate box. Where necessary, help the respondent obtain the total by summing the income of several family members or the income from several sources.
- 2 Income of All Related Members - We want the money income of the household head plus that of all his relatives who are currently household members. If the head of the household is living alone or with no other relatives, include his income only.
 - a Include the income of an Armed Forces member who is living at home with his family even though we do not record health information about him.
 - b If he is not living at home, include allotments and other money received by the family from him.
- 3 Income of Unrelated Persons - On the questionnaire prepared for each roomer, servant or other person not related to the household head, mark the box for his or her individual income. If two or more such persons are related to each other, for example, roomer and his wife, mark the box for their combined incomes.

- 4 Include as Income - Wages and salaries, (including tips and cash bonuses), net income from business or farm, pensions, dividends, interest, rents, welfare, unemployment or workmen's compensation, alimony, child support, and other periodic money income. Also, include money periodically received from friends or relatives not living in the household.
- 5 Do not Count as Income
 - a Income in kind, such as room and board, free meals in restaurants, value of crops produced by a farmer but consumed by his family, etc.
 - b Insurance payments or lump sum inheritances.
 - c Occasional gifts or money from persons not living in the household or any exchange of money between relatives living in the same household.
 - d Money received from selling one's own house, car, or other personal property.
 - e Withdrawals of savings from banks.
 - f Tax refunds.
- 6 Where "Zero" Income Reported - When no one in the family had income or when a "loss" or "broke even" was reported as the total income for the family, mark the Group "A" box. Before accepting an answer of "No income," be sure the respondent understands all of the things we count as income.
- 7 Get Best Estimate - In difficult cases, you may have to help the respondent. Find out who worked during the past 12 months, how much they made a week, etc.; find out who operated a business or farm; or who received any pension, dividends, etc.

Questions 16 and 17, Person Income

16 - 17

16 - 17

<p>16a. Which (other) family members received some income during the past 12 months? Mark "Income" box in person's column.</p>	16a.	<input type="checkbox"/> Income
<p>b. Did any other family members receive any income during the past 12 months?</p>		<p>Y (Reask 16a and b) N</p>
<p>If only one person with "Income" box marked, go to Household page. If 2 or more persons with "Income" box marked, ask 17 for each.</p>		<p>00 <input type="checkbox"/> A 04 <input type="checkbox"/> E 08 <input type="checkbox"/> I</p>
<p>17. Which of these income groups represents --'s income for the past 12 months?</p>	17.	<p>01 <input type="checkbox"/> B 05 <input type="checkbox"/> F 09 <input type="checkbox"/> J 02 <input type="checkbox"/> C 06 <input type="checkbox"/> G 10 <input type="checkbox"/> K 03 <input type="checkbox"/> D 07 <input type="checkbox"/> H</p>

- 1 Ask questions 16a-b to determine the amount of income received by the individual family members.
 - a Ask question 16a and mark the "Income" box for each person reported as receiving income during the past 12 months. Then ask question 16b to determine if any other family members received some income during the past 12 months. If the answer is "Yes," reask 16a using the parenthetical "other" and mark the "Income" box in that person's column. Continue to reask 16a and b until a final "No" is received to 16b, then go to question 17.
 - b If only one person receives income or if it is a one-person household, mark the "Income" box in that person's column, circle "N" in 16b, and go to the Household page.

- 2 If there are two or more persons for whom you have marked the "Income" box in question 16, ask question 17 for each one, including Armed Forces members living at home.

This question obtains the income group which corresponds to the income received by each person during the past 12 months.

Do not probe to correct any inconsistencies between the responses given to question 17 and the family income reported in question 15.

- 3 If a Social Security or Welfare check is received in the parent's name but is intended for a child's care, mark the income box and the income group in the child's column.

- 4 If more than one person is covered by a bulk check, probe to determine the individual income. If this is unknown, put the total amount in the column for the person to whom the check is made out and footnote the situation. Follow this same procedure when recording income or allotments received from Armed Forces members living away from home.

CHAPTER 11. TABLE X AND ITEM E



Table X



TABLE X - LIVING QUARTERS DETERMINATIONS AT LISTED ADDRESS					
Line No.	LOCATION OF UNIT		If listed, enter sheet and line number, STOP Table X, and continue interview for original sample unit. If outside Area Segment boundary, mark box below. STOP and - Go to next line of Table X, if additional quarters determined. OR Go to Household page, item 9, or Probe page, question 1 (as applicable).		
	Where are these quarters located? Enter exact description or location, e.g., basement, 2nd floor, rear. After entering description or location: • In Area Segment, go to (3) • In other type of Segments, - If living quarters are not within the same specific sample address (and structure, if Permit Segment) - STOP TABLE X - Otherwise, go to (3)	• If listed, enter sheet and line number, STOP Table X, and continue interview for original sample unit. • If unlisted, - And Area Segment, go to (4). - And another type of Segment, go to (5) (3)			
(1)	(2)			(3)	(4)
1			S ___ L ___	<input type="checkbox"/>	Outside segment boundary
2			S ___ L ___	<input type="checkbox"/>	Outside segment boundary
3			S ___ L ___	<input type="checkbox"/>	Outside segment boundary

NOTE: Be sure to continue interview for original sample unit.

Are these (Specify location) quarters for more than one group of people? If "Yes," fill one line for each group.	USE OR CHARACTERISTICS			CLASSIFICATION		
	OCCUPIED Do the occupants of these (Specify location) quarters live and eat with any other group of people?	ALL QUARTERS Do these quarters in (Specify location) have:		N - Not a separate unit - Add occupants to this questionnaire. (Complete a separate questionnaire for each unrelated person or family group.) HU OT } Separate unit - interview on a separate questionnaire.		
(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)		
Yes No	Yes - Go to (9) and circle N No	Yes No	Yes No	N	HU	OT
Yes No	Yes - Go to (9) and circle N No	Yes No	Yes No	N	HU	OT
Yes No	Yes - Go to (9) and circle N No	Yes No	Yes No	N	HU	OT

1 Table X is designed to record the existence of additional living quarters at the sample address and to help determine whether the living quarters are a part of the unit being interviewed or constitute an EXTRA unit, to be interviewed on a separate questionnaire.

2 See Part C, Topic 43 for instructions for filling Table X.

3 Be sure to continue the interview for the original sample unit after filling Table X.

(E)

Item E

(E)

E	If this questionnaire is for an EXTRA unit, enter Control Number of original sample unit _____	If in AREA SEGMENT, also enter for FIRST unit listed on property _____	LISTING SHEET	
			Sheet number	Line number

Complete item E (above Table X) on each questionnaire prepared for an EXTRA unit. Item E requires the control number of the original sample unit; and if the EXTRA unit is in an area segment, the Area Segment Listing Sheet and line number of the first unit listed on the same property as the original sample unit.

CHAPTER 12. PROCEDURES FOR EXTRA UNITS AND MERGED UNITS

A EXTRA Units

- 1 An EXTRA unit is an unlisted unit, found at the sample address at time of interview. For a more complete discussion of EXTRA units, refer to Part C, Topic (13).
- 2 Prepare an HIS-1 for each EXTRA unit, whether occupied or vacant.
 - a Transcribe to this questionnaire, heading items 2, 3, and 4 from the questionnaire for the original unit.
 - b Transcribe PSU and segment number to item 5 but leave the space for serial number blank.
 - c Item 7, YEAR BUILT - Mark the Ask or Do NOT Ask box the same as for the original unit.
 - d Item 10, Land use - Mark the URBAN/RURAL boxes the same as for the original sample unit.
 - e Fill item E on the back of the questionnaire for the EXTRA unit.
 - f If the EXTRA unit is occupied, complete the questionnaire in the usual fashion. If the EXTRA unit is vacant, fill the questionnaire as you would for any vacant unit.

See page E1-10 for items which must be filled prior to transmittal.

- 3 Prepare an INTER-COMM; fill the heading items and explain how the EXTRA unit was discovered. Attach the INTER-COMM to the questionnaire for the EXTRA unit.

B Merged Units

- 1 A merger is a unit which is formed by the combination of two or more units. The resulting unit may or may not be in the current sample.
 - a To determine if the merged unit should be interviewed, see Part C, Topic (25) of the manual.
 - b For merged units discovered at time of updating, see Part C, Topic (25).

2 Questionnaires

- a First Unit Involved in Merger—A Current Sample Unit - If the first of the listed units which are involved in the merger is a unit for which you have a questionnaire, interview the merged unit on that questionnaire. If the merger involves any other units for which you have questionnaires, return those questionnaires as Type C—merged.
 - b First Unit Involved in Merger—Not a Current Sample Unit - If the first of the listed units involved in the merger is not a current sample unit but the merger involves one or more other units for which you do have questionnaires, return all the questionnaires as Type C—merged.
 - c On the Questionnaire Used for the Merger - Enter in item (a) the complete description or address of the units now merged. In the footnotes section, enter the date the merger was discovered.
- 3 In addition to the entries required on the questionnaires for merged units, certain notations must be made on the listing sheet. For these instructions, refer to Part C, Topic (25).
- 4 Prepare an INTER-COMM; fill the heading items and specify sheet and line numbers of the merged units. Attach the INTER-COMM to the questionnaires for the merged units.

CHAPTER 13. NONINTERVIEW HOUSEHOLDS

A General

A noninterview household is one for which information is not obtained because:

The unit is occupied but an interview was not possible.

or

The unit is occupied by persons not eligible for interview.

or

The unit is not occupied.

- 1 Noninterviews are classified into three groups—Types A, B, and C. The Type A group consists of households occupied by persons eligible for interview and for whom you would have filled questionnaires if you had obtained an interview. Sample units which are not interviewed for other reasons are Type B and C noninterviews. They are covered in Part C of this manual.
- 2 Every Type A noninterview means we are losing valuable information and our sample returns may not be representative of the population. These noninterviews may arise under the following circumstances:
 - a No one is found at home in spite of repeated visits.
 - b The entire family is temporarily away during all of the interview period.
 - c The respondent refuses to give information.
 - d The unit, although occupied, cannot be reached because of impassable roads.
 - e An interview cannot be made because of serious illness or death in the family.
 - f You are unable to locate a sample unit. (Not applicable in area segments.)

Under some circumstances, Type A noninterviews are unavoidable. However, if you establish good relations with your respondents and make your visits when people are likely to be home, you can avoid many noninterviews.

B Questionnaires for Noninterviews

Return a questionnaire for each noninterview sample unit. Mark the noninterview reason in item 18 and fill other items as indicated on the questionnaire.

C How to Report Type A Noninterviews

Mark one of the four boxes in HIS-1, item 18: "Refusal," "No one at home," "Temporarily absent," or "Other" as defined below for units occupied by persons eligible for interview which were not interviewed.

- 1 Refusal - Occasionally, a household may refuse to give any information. For example, the manager of a hotel or other type of special place may refuse to allow you to interview persons in the special place. In a footnote, explain the pertinent details regarding the respondent's reason for refusing to grant the interview. Return the HIS-1 as a Type A noninterview with "Refusal" marked.

Explain the circumstances on an Inter-Comm for any refusal household, attach it to the HIS-1 involved and mail it to the Regional Office with your other completed work. Your office will send a letter to the respondent (carbon copy to you) requesting the household's cooperation and stating that you will call on them again. If your supervisor will be in the area on other business, he may also visit the refusal household to try to obtain their cooperation.

- 2 No One at Home - If no one is at home at your first call, proceed as follows:

Fill a Request for Appointment (Form 11-38 or 11-38a) indicating when you plan to call back. Enter your name and telephone number in the space provided.

Also enter the date and time you said you would call back in a footnote on the Household page.

In situations in which the use of appointment forms is impractical, call back in an effort to contact the household. Try to find out from neighbors, janitors, or other knowledgeable persons when the occupants will be home.

If you have made a number of callbacks at various times of the day and still have been unable to contact the respondent, return the HIS-1 as noninterview, marking the "No one at home" box in item 18. Do not confuse this reason with the noninterview reason "Temporarily absent."

- 3 Temporarily Absent - When no one is home at the first visit, find out from neighbors, janitors, etc., whether the occupants are temporarily absent. Report a household as "Temporarily absent" if all of the following conditions are met:

HIS-100
(1978)

All the occupants are away temporarily on a vacation, business trip, caring for sick relatives, or some other reason, and will not return before your close-out date for that week.

and

The personal effects of the occupants, such as furniture, are there. Even if the furniture is there, be sure it is the occupant's furniture because it could be a furnished unit for rent.

and

The unit is not for rent or for sale during the period of absence.

EXCEPTION: The unit is for rent or sale; however, it is not available until a specified time when the present occupants will leave the unit. For example, the present occupants are trying to sell their house with an agreement that they would not have to move until two weeks after the selling date. If, when you arrive to interview the unit, you discover that it has not been sold and that the occupants are away for the interview period, mark "Temporarily absent" as the noninterview reason.

and

The unit is not a summer cottage or other seasonal type unit.

If the occupants will return on a certain date, record this date in the notes space of the Household page and the source of the information, such as a neighbor. If the date of their expected return is before the end of the interview period, make a return visit, if feasible.

If the occupants are definitely not expected to return before the end of the interview period, enter where they are--address and telephone number, if possible--and call the information to your office immediately. Depending upon where the occupants are, your office may be able to arrange with another office for one of their interviewers to obtain the interview.

- 4 Other - Mark occupied units which are noninterview for reasons other than "Refusal," "No one at home," or "Temporarily absent," as "Other" in HIS-1, item 18, with the specific reason entered in the space provided.

Among others, these reasons could include the following:

"No eligible respondent"

"Death in family"

"Household quarantined"

"Roads impassable" - During the winter months or in case of floods or similar disaster, there may be households which cannot be reached because of impassable roads. In such cases, ascertain whether or not it is occupied from neighbors, local grocery stores, gasoline service stations, Post Office or rural mail carrier, the county recorder of deeds, the U.S. Forest Service (Department of Agriculture) or other local officials.

If you determine the unit is occupied, mark "Other" in item 18 and describe the circumstances in the space provided.

If you determine the unit is vacant, determine which box to mark in item 18, Type B, using the criteria given in Part C, Topic 28.

D Type B and C Noninterviews

Mark the category that indicates why a sample unit is a Type B or C noninterview. An explanation of Type B and C noninterview reasons is given in Part C, Topic 28. Use the Other—Specify categories to describe any Type B or Type C noninterview for which a reason has not been provided. An INTER-COMM must accompany all Type C noninterviews.

A General

During sample 781 (January-April 1978) two versions of a Family Medical Expense Supplement (FMES) will be used. You will leave one version at each interviewed household. The forms, HIS-1B(a) and HIS-2B(a) obtain similar information about family medical expenses during 1977. The respondent and his family will complete the form and mail it to the Regional Office. The cover page contains a letter which explains the purpose of the supplement and the remainder of the form contains questions on medical and dental expenses incurred by each person during 1977 as well as questions on the costs of health insurance coverage for the entire family. The Regional Office will indicate which form to leave in each household by an entry on your 11-35. All units in a particular segment will receive the same form.

B Supplement Procedures

- 1 Transcribe the PSU, segment number, and serial number of the household to the space provided on the cover page of the assigned form. For units with no preassigned serial number, enter "extra." Also enter the column number of the head of the household and your name and code. Enter the name and person number of each related family member in a separate column of the HIS-1B(a) or on a separate page of the HIS-2B(a) from the HIS-1. Keep the names in the same order as they appear on the HIS-1, making sure the column numbers agree with those on the HIS-1. Include any Armed Forces member living at home that you deleted from the HIS-1. We DO want to obtain any out-of-pocket medical expenses for these persons.
- 2 After transcribing the identification items, hand the correct FMES form to the respondent with an envelope pre-addressed to the Regional Office, turn to the back cover of your Information Card Booklet and read the following introduction:

This is a special questionnaire which contains questions about your (family's) medical expenses for 1977. Please answer all of the questions including the ones on the back of the questionnaire and mail it back to the Census Bureau within 5 days in the preaddressed envelope. No stamp is required.

- 3 Leave as many forms of the same type as required for the household. For example, if there are ten related members in the Smith household, you would leave two forms for the household. In these cases, "X" out the back page of the second questionnaire. For Form HIS-1B(a), change the preprinted person numbers on the second supplement to agree with those on the HIS-1. Also add "of all forms" to questions 7, 8, and 9 on page 3 of the first supplement so the respondent will be sure to include ALL family members. Indicate on the front cover in the upper right hand corner, "1 of 2," "2 of 2," etc. of either form.

If there are household members who are not related to the head of the household, give a separate Family Medical Care Expense form to each such person or group (family) (e.g., roomer and roomer's wife) after completing the interview for them. Enter the column number of the unrelated person or the head of each family unit as the household head in box "d" of the cover page on their HIS-1B(a) or HIS-2B(a). For example, if Pat Moore, a roomer in the Jones household, is person number 5 on the HIS-1, enter "5" as the head on the FMES form you complete for Pat Moore. Be sure to correct the person numbers on the inside pages of the supplement forms.

Leave as many pre-addressed envelopes as necessary at each household.

- 4 You are NOT expected to fill the Family Medical Expenses Supplement at the time you conduct the HIS interview. However, if you feel the respondent will not or cannot complete the form, ask if you may help to complete it now. Use your own discretion in these cases. In circumstances such as these, footnote the situation and enter the respondent's name in the appropriate question, 3 or 11, on the back page of the form.

B Family Medical Expense Control Record

The Control Record, HIS-3, is a record of the HIS-1B(a)'s and 2B(a)'s which have been left at interviewed households and is used by the Regional Office and/or the followup interviewer for control purposes and for any necessary followup. Each household in a segment must be entered on the Control Record, including those households which are final noninterviews (Type A, B, or C). Complete the Control Record at any time prior to transmittal of the segment to the Regional Office.

The Control Record is divided into identification items and three sections. You will complete the identification items (from the HIS-1) and Section I; Section II will be completed by the Regional Office and Section III will be filled by the Regional Office or a followup interviewer.

1 Complete Section I as follows:

- a Enter the serial number of the household and mark the type of form left in column (a). For units with no preassigned serial number enter "Extra" below the serial number box.

HIS-100
(1978)

- b For noninterviews, enter the serial number in column (a) and in column (b), "Noninterviews," mark the box for the type, for example, " A."
 - c Complete columns (c) and (d) for completed HIS interviews. Enter the complete mailing address. Enter the area code and telephone number or mark the "No phone" box.
 - d Enter the names and column numbers of all person in column (d), one person to a line, as they are listed on the HIS-1 questionnaire. Be sure the person number on the supplement questionnaire and the HIS-3 agree with the person number for that person on the HIS-1 questionnaire. If you delete a person on the questionnaire, do not enter his name or number on the Control Record unless it is an Armed Forces member living at home. For the head of the household only, also enter a title, e.g., Mr., Mrs., Miss, Sister Mary, Father John, etc. Enter the first name first, then the last name, e.g., Mr. John Jones. Last names that are the same as the one immediately preceding may be shown by a dash.
 - e Circle the column number of the household HIS-1 respondent and circle "Y" or "N" to indicate whether or not each of the listed persons is an eligible respondent according to current HIS rules.
 - f If there are more than six persons in a household, continue entering their names and serial number in the next block on the Control Record. Start a new block for each different serial number or for each unrelated person or group. In the latter case, repeat the serial number in column (a) and indicate the unrelated person or head of the group (family) unit by entering a title as instructed in part B-1-d above.
- 2 Transmit the HIS-3 Control Records with the questionnaires and the segment folder. Before transmitting the assignment, review the Control Records to be sure you have completed at least one block per household (including noninterviews), providing all the required information.
- 3 In the event that a respondent does not return the HIS-1B(a) or 2B(a) form, the Regional Office will initiate some followup action, either by mail or by telephone, to obtain the information. Because the follow-up forms will be prepared using the information which is on the control record, it is especially important that we have a correct and adequate mailing address and telephone number (or the fact that the household does not have a telephone) for all interviewed households. It is extremely important that you complete the forms legibly.

HIS-100
(1978)

PART E

INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES AND ADMINISTRATIVE

CHAPTER 1. INTERVIEWING TECHNIQUES

A How to Begin the Interview

1 Introduce Yourself to the Respondent

a The first step in the interview is to introduce yourself, including these five points:

- 1) Your name.
- 2) The U.S. Bureau of the Census.
- 3) Your Identification Card.
- 4) The fact that it is a health survey.
- 5) U.S. Public Health Service.

b A suggested introduction is:

"I am _____ from the United States Bureau of the Census; here is my identification card). We are taking a health survey for the United States Public Health Service."

c If you are not invited in immediately after you have introduced yourself, and you determine that the household is to be interviewed, you may add, "May I come in?"

2 Conforming to the Privacy Act of 1974

a An advance letter, sometimes called the "Dear Friend" letter, is sent out from the Regional Office on Monday preceding the week of interview. It is sent only to those households for which a specific street address or mailing address has been obtained. This letter tells the respondent that his household has been selected for inclusion in the sample and briefly explains the general purpose of the survey in addition to conforming to the Privacy Act of 1974.

- b It will be necessary for you to inquire if respondents received the "Dear Friend" letter. It is not necessary to ask if they have read it. If the "Dear Friend" letter was not received or if the respondent does not know if it was received, provide him/her with a copy. If the respondent wishes to read the letter prior to the interview, allow sufficient time for that purpose. If the respondent inquires about the purpose of the survey, even though a copy of the "Dear Friend" letter had been provided, you should offer an explanation such as:

"The Bureau of the Census is conducting the HIS Survey for the U.S. Public Health Service because of the urgent need for up-to-date statistics on the health of the people. The survey is authorized by Title 42, United States Code, Section 242k. The information collected is confidential and will be used only to prepare statistical summaries. Participation in this survey is voluntary and there are no penalties for refusing to answer any question. However, your cooperation is extremely important in obtaining much needed information to insure the completeness and accuracy of the data."

At households where two or more members are interviewed at different times, it is not necessary to give the second person a letter or to inquire if he has seen the original letter.

- c After inquiring about the "Dear Friend" letter and seating yourself, begin immediately with the first question of the interview: "What is your exact address?" The sooner the respondent begins to participate in the interview, the better. To start off with the interview is much more desirable than to describe the types of questions you are planning to ask.
- d If persons who are not members of the immediate family are present, suggest to the respondent before continuing that he might prefer to talk to you in a more private place. Even though a respondent might not refuse to be interviewed under these circumstances, the presence of outsiders might cause a reluctance to talk about certain types of illnesses which could result in a loss of information and cause a bias in the data.

HIS-100
(1978)

A3

3 Further Explanation of the Survey

a Background of the Health Interview Survey

- 1) The National Health Survey, of which the Health Interview Survey is a part, is authorized by Title 42, United States Code, Section 242k. The National Health Survey is supported by both major political parties, by the American Medical Association, and other organizations.
- 2) The National Health Survey is a fact-finding survey only. Everyone realizes the importance of information about people's health and medical care, and they trust the survey to be concerned only with gathering facts about these health problems--and not with how the problems should be solved. Actually, when there are controversies about how to solve some health problem both sides turn to the Health Interview Survey for the facts on the situation because they trust the survey to be unbiased.
- 3) If the respondent confuses this survey with other census work, or the 10-year Census, explain that this is one of the many special surveys that the Census Bureau is asked to carry out because of its function as an objective fact-finding agency and because of its broad experience in conducting surveys.

b Reluctant Respondents

- 1) You will find that most respondents will accept your introduction as the reason you are taking the survey. However, there will be a few who will want more information about the survey and you should be prepared to answer their questions. There may be a few others who are reluctant to give information, or who may actually refuse to be interviewed because they don't want to be bothered or because they don't believe the survey has any real value.

2) If you have difficulty in obtaining an interview, or if the respondent questions the purpose of the survey, use the information given in the letter, the explanation in the flashcard booklet and/or the material in Part A, Chapter 1 of this manual. Use your own words to suit the level of understanding of the respondent and stress the confidential treatment given to all information received. This should be done also at any point during the interview if the respondent should hesitate to answer certain questions.

c Why This Household--Explain that it would be too costly and time-consuming to interview everyone in the United States and therefore a sample of addresses was selected. The respondent's happens to be one of the representative addresses picked. Assure him that the selection was not based on who lives at the address, and whether or not they have problems with their health. Each address represents approximately 1,300 households. Taken as a group, the people living at these sample addresses will represent the total population of the United States in the health statistics produced and published by the Public Health Service.

d How Long Will It Take

- 1) Mention that the length of the interview depends on the number of people in the family and on their health conditions. Do not say that the interview will take only a few minutes.
- 2) If the respondent states that he has no time right now for an interview, find out when you can come back. However, always assume (without asking) that the respondent has the time right now unless he tells you otherwise.

B Your Own Manner

- 1 Your greatest asset in conducting an interview efficiently is to combine a friendly attitude with a business-like manner. If a respondent's conversation wanders away from the interview, try to cut it off tactfully, preferably by asking the next question on the questionnaire. Overfriendliness and concern on your part about the respondent's personal troubles may actually lead to your obtaining less information.

HIS-100
(1978)

B2

- 2 It is especially important in this survey that you maintain an objective attitude. Do not indicate a personal opinion about replies you receive to questions, even by your facial expression or tone of voice. Since the illness discussed may be of a personal or serious nature, expressions of surprise, disapproval, or even sympathy on your part may cause respondents to give untrue answers or to withhold information. Your own objectivity about the questions will be the best method for putting the respondent at ease and making him feel free to tell you of the conditions and illnesses in his family.
- 3 Avoid "talking down" to respondents when explaining terms but give as direct and simple explanations as possible.

C How to Ask the Questions

- 1 Ask Each Question as Instructed--The uniformity and value of the final results depend on all interviewers asking the questions in the same order and with the same wording.
 - a If you change the order, it is likely that both you and the respondent will become confused. This is especially true of the health questions, which refer to different periods of time. Asking the questions out of order would force the respondent to keep jumping back and forth between time periods and would invite confusion.
 - b It is bad interviewing practice to ask a question when the respondent has already provided you with the specific answer. It may confuse the respondent, or even antagonize him, and may result in loss of information for later questions in the interview.
 - c If you are sure of the specific answer, you may make the appropriate entry without asking the question. However, if you are not sure about the earlier answer, it is good interviewing practice to verify the answer by saying something like: "I believe you told me earlier that a motor vehicle was involved in the accident, is this correct?"

- 2 Listen to the respondent until he finishes his statement. Failure to do so can result in your putting down incorrect or incomplete entries. The two most common types of errors made in this regard are:
 - a Failure to listen to the last half of the sentence because you are busy recording the first half.
 - b Interrupting the respondent before he has finished, especially if the respondent hesitates. A respondent often hesitates when trying to recollect some fact, and you should allow sufficient time for this to be done. Also, people will sometimes answer "I don't know" at first, when actually they are merely considering a question. When you think that this may be the situation, wait for the respondent to finish the statement before repeating the question or asking an additional question.
- 3 Repeat the Question--The respondent may not always understand the question when it is first asked, and sometimes you can tell from the answer that the question has not been understood. In this case, repeat the question using the same phrasing as you used originally. This should not prove to be embarrassing since what you said the first time was not heard or understood. Frequently the respondent is capable of understanding the question but has missed a word or two. If you think it is helpful, you can preface the repetition of the question by a phrase, such as "I see," "Oh, yes," and the like, and then repeat the actual question.
- 4 Repeat the Answer--Sometimes it is helpful to repeat the respondent's answer and then pause expectantly. Often this will bring out additional information on the subject. It is also useful as a check on your understanding of what has been said, especially if the statements or comments given have not been entirely clear. For example, "Including your doctor visit last week, that makes three times during the past two weeks?"
- 5 Avoid Influencing the Respondent
 - a Experience in other studies has shown that respondents tend to agree with what they think you expect them to say, even though the facts in the case may be different. Therefore, you must avoid "leading" the respondent by adding words to the questions or making slight changes in them that might indicate an answer you expect to hear.

HIS-100
(1978)

G5

- b Even slight changes which may seem to make no apparent difference can prove harmful and should be avoided. For example, the question, "During those two weeks did you stay in bed because of any illness or injury?" is greatly changed in meaning when changed to, "You didn't stay in bed during those two weeks because of any illness or injury, did you?" The question, "What did the doctor say it was? Did he give it a medical name?" would have a different meaning if changed to, "Did the doctor say you had glaucoma?"
 - c Changes in question wording such as these suggest answers to the respondent and must be avoided. In an effort to be helpful the respondent may say, "Yes, that was it" or "That is true" or "That sounds about right;" whereas, the facts may have been quite different.
 - d Sometimes the respondent may not know the answers to the questions, and if this is the case, record the fact that he doesn't know.
- 6 Information Given Out of Turn or Volunteered--Sometimes respondents will start describing the health of the family in answer to the very first question and will cover their own illnesses and those of other family members in such a way that it is difficult to keep straight which person has which condition. When this happens, you should explain that you cannot keep up with him in recording the information and ask him to permit you to ask the questions as they appear so that he won't need to give the information more than once.

If however, a single condition is volunteered (reported while asking questions not designed to pick up conditions), during the asking of the probe questions, refer to D3-18, paragraph 1a to determine whether or not it should be entered in item G2.

7 Do Not "Practice Medicine"

- a Do not try to decide yourself whether or not any member of the household is ill. If a person mentions some condition but makes light of it or expresses doubt that he was "ill," enter the condition on the questionnaire anyway and ask the appropriate questions about it.

- b Do not attempt to diagnose a respondent's illness from his symptoms, or to substitute names of diseases of the respondent's own description of the trouble. If a respondent's answer to a question is not specific or detailed enough, ask additional questions in accordance with instructions in paragraph D below. However, the final entry must always represent what the respondent said, in his or her own words.
- c If the respondent asks for any information regarding his health, refer him to his physician or the local medical society.

8 Pacing the Interview

- a Try to avoid hurrying the interview even under trying circumstances. If the respondent senses that you are in a rush to complete the questions and get out of the house, she will probably cooperate by omitting important health information which she might feel would take too much time to explain and record.
- b Maintaining a calm, unhurried manner and asking the questions in an objective and deliberate way will do much to promote an attitude of relaxed attention on the part of the respondent.

D Probing

1 When to Probe

- a Sometimes a person will give you an answer which does not furnish the kind of information you need or one which is not complete. It will be necessary to ask additional questions to obtain the required information, being careful to encourage the respondent to do the explaining without suggesting what the explanations might be. Ask as many questions as necessary to satisfy yourself that you have obtained complete and accurate information insofar as the respondent is able to give it to you.
- b Be sure to keep asking additional questions until you have a complete picture and all the pertinent details.
- c However, do not "over-probe." If the respondent says she does not know the answer to a question, do not try to insist that she give some answer. This might irritate the respondent, and also make her wonder about our interest in accurate responses.

2 How to Probe

- a Ask in such a way that you obtain the information required without suggesting specific answers to the respondent. For example, "Please explain that a little more," "Please describe what you mean," or "What was the operation for?" Fit the questions to the information which has already been given.

D2

- b In some instances you may need to suggest specific alternatives to the respondent when general phrases have not been successful in obtaining the information. This is also an acceptable method for asking additional questions, provided the respondent is never given a single choice. Any items specifically suggested to the respondent must always consist of two or more choices. The examples below illustrate both acceptable and unacceptable methods for asking additional questions.

<u>Acceptable</u>	<u>Not acceptable</u>
1) Can you tell me the approximate number of days?	Would you say it was six days?
2) You said you first noticed the condition about a year ago. Was it more than 12 months ago or less than 12 months ago?	Was it more than a year ago?
3) Do you all live and eat together?	Are you all one household?
4) Does she live the greater part of the year here or at her sister's home?	Is she a member of this household?
5) What kind of asthma is it?	Is it bronchial asthma?
c The "Not acceptable" questions in examples 3) and 4) show an interviewer who is unable to apply Census rules for determining the composition of a household, and expects the respondent (who doesn't know the Census rules) to make the decision.	
d The "Not acceptable" questions in examples 1) and 5) illustrate an invitation to the respondent to just say "Yes" without giving any thought to the question.	
e The "Acceptable" question in example 2) illustrates a proper way to give the respondent an opportunity to tie an event to a particular period of time. The "Not acceptable" question is again an invitation to the respondent to say "Yes."	

E Recording Information Correctly

Recording information correctly is just as important a part of the interview as asking the questions correctly. This involves writing clearly and plainly in the space allotted for descriptive entries. If additional description is required, make free use of the footnote space. Be careful not to leave blank spaces where they should be filled in.

- 1 Use a black lead pencil or ball point pen.
- 2 Use "DK" for "don't know" only to indicate that the respondent does not know the answer to a particular question. Do not use it to fill answers for questions that you may have overlooked at the time of interview.
- 3 If, after an interview, you discover blanks in the questionnaire for questions which should have been asked, leave the items blank.

F Review of Work

- 1 At Close of Interview--Look over the questionnaire while you are in the house so that you can ask any missing items or clarify any questions you might have. Check to be sure:
 - a You have completed a Condition page for each condition listed in item C2.
 - b You have completed a two-week doctor visits column for each doctor visit or call recorded in item C1.
 - c You have completed a hospital column for each hospital/nursing home stay recorded in item C1.
 - d You have completed all "Health Insurance" information.
 - e You have completed the Usual Source of Care page.
 - f You have completed the Blood Donor Page for all persons 17-64.
 - g You have completed all "person information."

HIS-100
(1978)

Fl

h From January 16 - April 16 you have given the household a Family Medical Expense Supplement.

2 Prior to Transmittal

a Review the Household pages for completeness. Verify that you have correctly filled the following items:

1) EXTRA Units

1 through 5 (Except serial number.)

6

7 (Ask or Do NOT Ask box must be marked same as for original unit. YEAR BUILT boxes marked, if required.)

8

10 (RURAL or URBAN box must be marked same as for original unit.)

11 through 12 (If required.)

13 through 19

Item E

2) Nonrelated Household Members

1 through 5

6b

15 through 19

3) More Than One Questionnaire for Related Household Members

1 through 5

17

4) Noninterviews

All items must be completed as specified in item 18.

b When you review your questionnaires, do not enter any information which should have been furnished by the respondent and recorded during the interview.

G "Thank You" Letters

The "Thank You" letters are signed by the Director of the National Center for Health Statistics. Leave one of these at each household after the interview has been completed. The letter thanks the respondent briefly for his cooperation and can be shown by the person interviewed to other members of the household who were not at home at the time of your call. In leaving the letter, say something such as: "Here is a letter of appreciation from the U.S. Public Health Service," or "Here is a letter from the Public Health Service thanking you for your cooperation in this survey."

H Use of Telephone

Use a local telephone wherever practicable. Telephone only:

1. To make appointments.
2. To obtain one or two items of information which you find are missing.

Consult your Administrative Handbook on use of long distance calls.

HIS-100
(1978)

CHAPTER 2. ADMINISTRATIVE

A Transmittal of Materials

- 1 Transmit all "materials" for a segment to the Regional Office together, in the same package. These include all questionnaires (completed interviews and final noninterviews), and the Segment Folder.
- 2 Mail the materials on the day you make your last call, that is, complete your last interview, in the (each) segment, but no later than Saturday of interview week.
- 3 If you feel you will not be able to complete your assignment by Saturday of interview week but can complete it by Monday or Tuesday of the following week, contact your office by Friday for instructions.
- 4 If you have picked up an EXTRA unit(s), enter "EXTRA" in the serial number column of the "Record of Transmittal" on the Segment Folder, following the serial numbers for questionnaires received from your office.
- 5 Enter the date you are mailing the "materials" for the segment in the Segment Folder in the "Date of Shipment" column opposite serial number "01."
- 6 If, in unusual circumstances, you are permitted to complete any questionnaires after interview week, enter the following notation in the lower left-hand corner of the mailing envelope: "Late transmittal for Week _____" (enter the appropriate interview week number, for example, 01, 02, etc.).

APPENDIX A TO PART E

CONFIDENTIAL NATURE OF INFORMATION COLLECTED
IN NATIONAL HEALTH SURVEYS

- 1 General - National Health Surveys are conducted for the U.S. Public Health Service by the Bureau of the Census.
- 2 Nondisclosure of Information - The Health Interview Survey involves obtaining on a continuing basis details of the personal health records of a large number of individuals throughout the Nation. The Public Health Service has given assurance to the public that information identifying the individual will be held strictly confidential, will be used solely by persons engaged in and only for, the purposes of the survey, and will not be disclosed or released to other persons or for any other purpose. Bureau of the Census employees will observe this assurance of confidentiality and are subject to the Public Health Service as well as Department of Commerce and Bureau of the Census laws against unauthorized disclosure.
- 3 Subpoena of Records - In the event of a record collected in the Health Interview Survey being subpoenaed, any Bureau employee upon whom such subpoena is served will communicate with the Director of the Census through your Regional Office. Action to satisfy such subpoena will be taken only as authorized by Public Health Service Regulations, Section 1.108 of Title 42, Code of Federal Regulations.
- 4 Penalties for Unauthorized Disclosure or Falsification - Unauthorized disclosure of individual information collected in the National Health Surveys is punishable by a fine of up to \$1,000, or imprisonment up to one year, or both (18 U.S.C. 1905). Deliberate falsification by an employee of any information in the survey is punishable by a fine up to \$10,000, or imprisonment up to five years, or both (18 U.S.C. 1001).

APPENDIX B TO PART E
DIAGNOSTIC ERROR CODES

<u>Error Code</u>	<u>Definition</u>
01	"Condition" which was reason for operation or surgery not given on same Condition page or in same hospital column. If code 01 is assigned, no other code is assigned.
02	"Condition" which was reason for laboratory tests, X-rays, observation, etc., not given in same hospital column. For example, "tests for ulcers" but the test results or final diagnosis is not given with no entry to indicate results or final diagnosis not known. If code 02 is assigned, no other code is assigned. An entry of checkup, routine checkup, or general checkup is acceptable.
03	Question 3a of Condition page or question 6 of Hospital page is "DK" or left blank; only "part of body" is entered; or "Part of body" entered with only very vague description of condition, for example, "bad back," "stomach bothers," "tubes in ear," "limps," "heart failure," etc. (with no indication as to what is wrong); or if the "Condition on Card C" box is marked in A1, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for a condition which is not on Card C. If code 03 is assigned, no other code is assigned.
04	"Cause" not given in question 3b, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for a condition other than cancer or those conditions on Card C. "On Card C" marked in 3b for a condition not on Card C.
05	"Kind" or "Manifestation" not given in question 3c, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for the conditions specified in question 3c.
06	"Effects" or "Manifestation" not given in question 3d, Condition page for allergy or stroke. "Effects" or "Manifestation" not given in question 6, Hospital page, for allergy. "Stroke" in 3b as the cause of a condition in 3a is acceptable.
07	"Part of body" is inadequate or not given in question 3e, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for the conditions, impairments or parts of body specified in 3e.

Error CodeDefintion

- 08 Accident questions (17-21, Condition page) not filled for an injury or for a condition due to an accident or injury. Footnote entry, "Same accident as condition _____," is acceptatble.
- 09 "Part of body" not given or inadequate in question 18, Condition page or question 6, Hospital page, for an accident or injury.
- 10 Inadequate description of "kind of injury" in 18a, Condition page or in question 6, Hospital page, for an accident or injury.
- 11 "Present effects" inadequate or not given in 18b, Condition page, for injury which happened before three months ago. For example, can't bend, no use of, etc.
- 12 Question 10 blank or incomplete for persons six years old or over for first condition reported on Condition page.
- 14 Impossible date or omission in question 2, Hospital page.
- 15 Omission or inconsistent entries in questions 4-5c of Hospital page.
- 16 Condition page not filled for condition reported on Hospital page only, with one or more nights in question 5b, Hospital page.
- 17 Condition page not filled for condition reported on two-week doctor visits page only.
- 18 Positive responses in probe questions 5-9, 11 and/or 14-17 and no entry in item C2 from these sources.
- 19 Limitation reported in probe questions 21-27 and no entry in item C2 from these sources.
- 20 Condition page not filled for a condition recorded in item C2.
- 21 No separate Condition page filled when more than one condition is on a single Condition page in question 3a.
- 22 Positive responses to probe questions 29-31 and no entry in item C1.
- 23 Hospital page not filled for Hospitalization reported in item C1.
- 24 Doctor visit column not filled for doctor visit reported in item C1.

PART F
GLOSSARY

PART F
GLOSSARY

HIS-100
(1978)

ACCIDENT--(D3-30) An unexpected event causing loss or injury resulting from carelessness or unavoidable causes. The terms "accident" and "injury" may be used interchangeably. There are cases, however, when an injury may not be accidental, for example, a war injury, a shooting, a stabbing, etc.

Also, accidents may occur without a resulting injury. For purposes of this survey, we are not interested in accidents in which there was no injury involved, unless there was restricted activity or medical attention in the past 2 weeks.

ADULT--Eligible respondent--(D3-1) 19 years old or older, or ever married.

ALL OR MOST OF THE DAY--(D3-23) More than half of the waking day.

ANNULLED MARRIAGE--(D3-20) Consider persons whose only marriage has been annulled as "never married."

ARMED FORCES--(D3-7) U.S. Army, Navy, Air Force, Marine Corps, or Coast Guard, and any National Guard Unit activated as part of the regular Armed Forces.

Include the six-month period served in connection with the provisions of the Reserve Forces Act of 1955.

Do not count as service in the Armed Forces, persons working in civilian positions for the Armed Forces, or serving in a National Guard Unit not activated as part of the regular Armed Forces.

BED--(D3-23) Anything used for sleeping including sofa, cot, or mattress.

BEING IN A HOSPITAL--(D3-50) Being admitted and staying overnight or longer in a hospital. Exclude visits to emergency room, or outpatient clinic.

BUSINESS, OWN--(See "Self-employed.")

CALENDAR CARD--(D1-4) A two-month calendar, interview month and preceding month.

COMMON LAW MARRIAGE--(D3-20) Consider persons with a common law marriage as married.

COMPANY OR INDUSTRY CLINIC--(D5-5) A company or plant doctors's office or clinic which is operated solely for the employees of that company or industry.

CONDITION--A state of health or physical fitness.

CONDITION TO BE ENTERED IN C2--(D3-17) A health problem or accident resulting in restricted activity, a doctor visit during the past 2 weeks; limitation of activity or conditions reported while asking the condition list, (question 32) if present during the specified time period.

CONVALESCENT HOME--(See "Nursing Home.")

CUT DOWN AS MUCH AS A DAY--(D3-26) A day when a person cuts down on his usual activities for the whole of that day because of illness or injury. Usual activities for any day means things that the person would usually do on that day.

Restricted activity does not imply complete inactivity, but all or most of a person's usual activities for

the day must be restricted for him to have a cut-down day.

DAY IN BED--(D3-23) Any day on which the person was kept in bed either all or most of the day because of illness or injury. Do not count taking a nap on "General principles" as a day in bed. Count the days as a patient in a hospital, sanitarium or nursing home as bed days whether or not the patient was actually lying in bed at the hospital, sanitarium or nursing home. Exclude hospital days for a normal newborn, unless the baby had some complication or illness.

DAYS LOST FROM WORK OR SCHOOL--(D3-23-24) A scheduled work or school day when more than 1/2 of the day was lost due to an illness or injury. Exclude Saturdays, Sundays, and holidays unless scheduled.

DENTIST--(D3-32) A person trained in the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of diseases of the teeth and adjacent tissues. For example, oral surgeon, orthodontist, periodontist, dental hygienist.

DIAGNOSIS OR TREATMENT--(D5-8) (a) An examination or test to diagnose an illness, regardless of whether the examination or test resulted in a diagnosis, or, (b) treatment or advice given by the doctor or under the doctor's supervision.

Include X-rays either for diagnostic purposes or treatment in this class.

DOCTOR--(D3-34) A medical practitioner with an M.D. or D.O. (Doctor of Osteopathy) degree, including ophthalmologists (occulists). Exclude chiropractors, chiroprudists, podiatrists, optometrists.

GENERAL PRACTITIONER--(D5-6) A medical doctor who does not limit his practice to a specialty.

SPECIALIST--(D5-6) A medical doctor who limits his practice to certain groups of people (children, women, etc.), certain conditions (diabetes, arthritis, etc.), certain parts of the body (eyes, ears, nose, and throat, etc.) or special procedures (anesthesia, radiology, etc.).

DOCTOR VISIT (SEE OR TALKED TO)--(D3-34)

(1) A visit by the person to the doctor, visits to a doctor's office, a clinic, a medical center and the outpatient department of a hospital where a person goes for treatment or examination ordered by a doctor but where he may not actually see or talk to a doctor.

(2) A visit by the doctor to the person. If the doctor visits the household to see one patient and while there examines or visits professionally another member of the household, count this visit as "doctor seen" or each individual for each condition receiving the doctor's attention.

(3) Telephone calls to or from a doctor (except requests for appointments or inquiries about a bill), including calls concerning the obtaining or renewal of a prescription.

(4) The case in which the person is himself a doctor and he followed his own treatment or advice.

(5) Talking on an informal basis to a family member or friend who is a doctor to obtain medical advice.

Note: Exclude visits for shots or examinations (such as chest X-rays) administered on a mass basis. For example, a visit to a clinic, mobile unit, or some similar place to receive an immunization, a single chest X-ray, or a certain diagnostic procedure which was being administered identically to all persons who were at the place for this purpose,

HIS-100
(1978)

would not be counted as a visit. However, physicals for athletes, or the Armed Services are not mass visits and should be included.

Also, exclude as "visits" calls a doctor made while the person was an inpatient in the hospital.

DOCTOR'S OFFICE--(D5-5) The office of a doctor in private practice. This may be an office in the doctor's home, an individual office in an office building or a suite of offices occupied by several doctors. This category also includes "doctors clinic."

ELIGIBLE RESPONDENT--(D3-1) A competent related adult household member 19 years old or over, single persons 17 or 18 years old if there is no related persons in the household who is 19 years old or over; unrelated adults responsible for the care of a child or an incompetent person; Armed Forces members living at home.

EMERGENCY ROOM--(D5-5) A unit of a hospital where persons may receive medical care usually of an urgent nature without or before being admitted as an inpatient.

EYE EXAMINATION (GLASSES)--(D5-9) An examination of the eyes for the purpose of establishing a need for eyeglasses or for a change in the type of eyeglasses being worn. Classify any other eye examination or treatment of an eye condition as "Diagnosis or treatment."

FARM (PLACE OF ACCIDENT)--(D4-36) A farm building or land under cultivation, but not in the farm home or premises. Farm includes a ranch, as used here.

FEDERAL GOVERNMENT--(See Government, Federal.)

FIRST NOTICED--(D4-26) When a condition first began to give any

trouble or show any symptoms. This could have been prior to the time the condition was diagnosed, if there were symptoms which later proved to be the diagnosed condition.

For the after effects of an old injury (one which happened more than three months ago), when the present ill-effects were first noticed. For a condition that has continued for a long time, such as emphysema, or stomach ulcer, it is the date the trouble was first noticed, not the date of the most recent attack or flare-up.

For conditions which usually last a short time, such as colds, but occur frequently, it is the date of the most recent attack.

FULL TIME JOB--(D10-13) One at which the person worked 35 or more hours per week.

GENERAL CHECKUP--(D5-8) A visit to a doctor for the purpose of determining the general state of the person's health. This category includes checkups for specific purposes, such as physical examinations required to obtain employment, for college entrance, to obtain insurances, etc.; periodic (yearly) general checkups; visits to the well-baby clinic etc.

However, a visit to a doctor for a checkup or examination for a specific condition such as when a person goes at regular intervals for a checkup for TB or a heart condition, should not be classified as "General checkup" but as "Diagnosis or treatment."

GOING TO SCHOOL--(D3-41) Attendance at public or private schools, whether the course is vocational or academic. Include special schools, e.g., for retarded children or corrective schools for delinquents. Include attendance at a university

or other institution for adult training or education.

GOVERNMENT, FEDERAL--(D10-29) Any branch of the Federal Government, including government-owned bus lines, government-owned electric power utilities, civilian employees of the Armed Forces and persons elected to paid Federal offices.

Exclude paid employees of the American Red Cross, the U.S. Chamber of Commerce and similar civic and national organizations (Pvt. pd.).

LOCAL--(D10-29) Employees of cities, towns, counties, and other local areas, including city owned bus lines, electric power companies, water and sewer services, and employees of public elementary and secondary schools. Since State Boards of Education often control subject content of schools, some school employees think that they are State employees but in almost all cases they are local government employees.

STATE--(D10-29) Employees of State government, including paid State officials, State police, and employees of State universities and colleges.

HEAD OF HOUSEHOLD--(D3-4) The person regarded as the head by the members of the household. It may be the chief bread winner of the family, the parent of the chief earner, the only adult member of the household, or a member of the Armed Forces living at home about whom we want no health information. In husband-wife households list the husband first, even if the wife is considered the head.

HEALTH INSURANCE PLAN--(D7-2) A plan specifically designed to pay all or part of the hospital bill of the insured individual.

Exclude:

- (1) Plans limited to dread diseases

only.

(2) Plans that pay only on the basis of the number of days missed from work.

(3) Public Welfare, Medicaid, "Crippled Children's Program," etc.

(4) Plans which pay only for accidents.

(5) Care given to dependents of military personnel.

(6) Veteran's benefits.

(7) Insurance that pays only for dental bills.

(8) Social Security Medicare.

(9) Income maintenance.

HIGHWAY (LAND)--(D4-38) Any street, road, path, etc., (either public or private) which is customarily used for vehicular traffic.

HOME (DOCTOR VISIT)--(D5-5) Any place where the person was staying at the time of the doctor visit, including own home, friend's home, hotel room.

HOME (PLACE OF ACCIDENT)--(D4-36) Includes a person's own home and also any other home, vacant or occupied, in which he might have been when he was injured, as well as homes being remodeled or undergoing repair. Consider an accident occurring at a house under construction as "Industrial place".

At home (adjacent premises) - The accident occurred in the yard, the driveway, patios, gardens, or walks to the house or a garage. On a farm, the adjacent premises include the home premises or garage, but not the barns or other buildings (unless used as a garage) or the land under cultivation.

At home (inside house) - The accident occurred while the person was inside the house, in any room or porch but not an inside garage. Porches, or steps leading directly to porches or entrances are considered as "inside the house." Falling out of a window or falling

HIS-100
(1978)

off a roof or porch also are included as "inside the house."

Also include in this category injuries happening within motel or hotel rooms. The lobby corridors, and other public places within the motel or hotel premises are not regarded as "home." Mark them as "other" and specify.

HOSPITAL (BEING IN)--(See "Being in a Hospital.") EMERGENCY ROOM--(See Emergency Room.) OUTPATIENT CLINIC--(See Outpatient Clinic.)

HOUSEHOLD--(D3-4) The entire group of persons who live in one housing unit or one other unit. It may be several persons living together or one person living alone. It includes the household head and any relatives living in the unit. The household may also include roomers, servants, or other persons not related to the head.

IMPAIRMENT--(D4-18) Deafness, trouble hearing or any other ear condition, blindness, trouble seeing, or any other eye condition, missing hand, arm, foot or leg--all or part of; trouble, stiffness, or any deformity of foot, leg, fingers, arm, or back.

IMMUNIZATION OR VACCINATION--(D5-9) Shots or injections to prevent particular diseases.

INCOME--(D10-34) Wages and salaries, tips, commissions, net income from business or farm, pensions, allotments, dividends, interest, rent, welfare, cash bonuses, alimony, and other money income.

INDUSTRIAL PLACE (PLACE OF ACCIDENT)
(D4-37) A factory, auto repair garage, railway yard, a warehouse, a workshop, a loading platform of a factory or store, etc. Include construction projects (houses, buildings, bridges, new roads) as well as buildings undergoing remodeling.

Classify private homes undergoing remodeling as "Home".

INJURY--(D3-30) Cuts, bruises, burns, sprains, fractures, "insect stings," "animal bites," "sunburn," "sun poisoning," "heat or sun strokes," "blister," "frostbite," "frozen feet," and poisoning. (See Poisoning.)

INPATIENT--(D5-5) One who remains overnight or longer in a hospital as a patient.

INTERVIEW, COMPLETED--(D2-14) All questions were asked on personal characteristics and health for all members of a household. If a respondent has refused to answer a few of the questions, such as income, but has provided the rest of the information to the best of his knowledge, the interview is considered completed.

PARTIALLY COMPLETED--(D2-12) An interview has not been obtained for some members of a household. Enter the person number and the reason for noninterview in the footnote space on the front of the questionnaire.

INTERVIEW WEEK--The week in which the interview is completed, beginning with Monday and ending with Sunday night.

JOB--(D10-11) A definite arrangement to work for pay full-time or part-time.

On Call--(D10-11) Do not consider a person "on call" to work only when his services are needed as having a job during weeks when he does not work. For example, a substitute teacher who did not work last week or the week before.

Seasonal--(D10-11) Consider seasonal employment as a job only during the season and not during the off season.

KEEPING HOUSE--(D3-41) Housework around the person's own home but not paid housework for someone else.

LAYOFF--(D10-12) Waiting to be called back to a job from which a person has been temporarily laid off or furloughed. Layoffs can be due to slack work, plant retooling or remodeling, seasonal factors, and the like. If a person was not working because of a labor dispute at his own place of employment, he is not considered "on layoff" but with a job from which he is absent.

LIMITATION OF ACTIVITIES--(D3-43) A person is limited if he considers himself to be limited in the kind or amount of work, housework, play or other activities he can do.

LOOKING FOR WORK--(D10-12) Any effort to get a job or to establish a business or profession. A person was looking for work if he actually tried to find work during the past two weeks and also if he made such efforts within the past 60 days, and was waiting during the past two weeks to hear the results of these earlier efforts.

MAIN (MAJOR) ACTIVITY--(D3-41) That activity which the person considers his major activity during the past 12 months.

MANUFACTURER--(D10-15) Producer of goods for sale.

MANUFACTURER'S SALES OFFICE--(D10-15) A separate sales office of a manufacturer away from the factory.

MOTOR VEHICLE--(D4-38) A power operated vehicle, not on rails, for transporting persons or property, intended for use on a land highway, either public or private; or a self-propelled non-highway vehicle, such as construction equipment, tractor, farm machinery, or tank when operating on a highway. Attached objects, such as a sled, coaster, or

trailer are considered as part of the motor vehicle.

MOVING--(D4-38) Consider the motor vehicle as moving if the wheels were moving (this includes skidding) or if the vehicle had come to a stop just an instant before the accident occurred.

NEVER MARRIED--(D3-20) Includes persons whose only marriage was annulled.

NEVER WORKED--(D10-30) Never had a full-time civilian job lasting 2 weeks or longer.

NONINTERVIEW--(D13-1) A sample unit which is not interviewed.

Type A Noninterview--(D13-1)

Refers to sample unit occupied by persons eligible for interview but for which no interview was obtained, such as Temporarily Absent or Refusal.

Refusal--A respondent refused to be interviewed. In a footnote explain the pertinent details regarding the respondent's reason for refusing.

No One at Home--After making repeated calls, you have not found an eligible respondent at home during the interview week even though there are people living there.

Temporarily Absent--The sample unit is the usual residence of a household which is temporarily away and will not return until after the particular interview period.

Other, Type A Noninterview--(D13-3) Occupied units on impassable roads, quarantined households and any other Type A cases not listed.

NONMEDICAL DOCTORS--(D3-34) Includes opticians, Christian Science Healers,

HIS-100
(1978)

optometrists, naturopaths and other persons giving advice or treatment but who are not medical doctors.

NONPAID--(D10-30) Work without pay on a farm or in a business owned by a related household member. Room and board and a cash allowance are not counted as pay for these family workers.

If the person receives money for such work, this person should be classified as "P".

NURSING HOME--(D3-51) Any type of home, sanitarium or other place which provides medical or personal care for reasons of mental or physical health or advanced age.

ON CALL--(See "Job.")

ONSET--(See "First Noticed.")

OPERATION--(D6-11) Any cutting of the skin, including stitching of cuts or wounds. Include cutting or piercing of other tissue, scraping of internal parts of the body, for example, curettage of the uterus, and setting of fractures and dislocations (Traction). Also include the insertion of instruments in body openings for internal examination and treatment, such as bronchoscopy, proctoscopy, cystoscopy, and the introduction of tubes for drainage. Include anything ending in "--ectomy" for example, appendectomy (removal of appendix), tonsillectomy (removal of tonsils), etc. Injections, transfusions and routine blood tests are not operations; neither is pumping out or washing out of the stomach or bowels. Also do not include a routine circumcision for a newborn baby as an operation.

OUTPATIENT CLINIC--(D5-5) A unit of a hospital where persons may go for medical care without being admitted as an inpatient.

PLACE OF RECREATION AND SPORTS--
(D4-37) A place designed for sports

and recreation, such as a bowling alley, amusement park, baseball field, dance hall, mountain or beach resort, or stadium. Exclude places of recreation or sports located on the premises of an industrial place or school, and places not designed for recreation or sports, such as a hill used for sledding or a river used for boating or swimming.

PLACE "OWN", "RENT", "RENT FREE"
(D2-8) The entire acreage considered to be part of the same "place," including any part rented out to others. Even if the owner rents out all the land but continued to live on it, the rented land is part of the owner's place.

OWN--(D2-7) Owned or being bought by a household member.

RENT--(D2-7) "place" for renters includes only the house and land for which they are paying rent, and not the entire acreage or property of the owner. This is an especially important distinction and one which you should explain to the respondents, if necessary.

RENT FREE--(D2-8) Occupied rent free in exchange for services rendered, such as caretaker, janitor, etc.

POISONING--(D3-30) Include as injury, illnesses resulting from swallowing, drinking, breathing or coming in contact with some poisonous substance or gas. Poisoning may also occur from an overdose of a substance that is nonpoisonous when taken in normal doses. Exclude conditions which are diseases or illnesses, such as "poison oak," "poison ivy," "ptomaine or food poisoning."

PRE OR POSTNATAL CARE--(D5-9)
Consultation concerning the care of the mother, including visits by the mother to the doctor for checkups during the pregnancy and also during the period right after delivery.

Exclude consultations for illnesses not related to pregnancy or delivery.

PRESENT EFFECTS--(D4-35) Present ill effects or results of an accident or injury which occurred more than three months ago.

PRIMARY SAMPLING UNIT (PSU)--(A1-5) A combination of one or more counties and cities, or part of counties. PSU's are selected by scientific sampling methods to represent the entire population of the United States.

PRIVATE-PAID--(D10-29) Working for a private employer for wages, salary or commissions including compensation by tips, piece-rates, or pay in kind, if received from nongovernmental source, regardless of whether the source is a large corporation or a single individual. Include also work for wages or salary for settlement houses, churches, unions, and other nonprofit organizations.

RACE--(D3-15)

White--Includes Latin-Americans unless they are definitely Black, Indian, or other nonwhite.

Black--Black or Negro.

Other--Race other than White or Black, including Japanese, Chinese, American Indian, Korean, Eskimo, and Hindu.

Code the race of the father for persons of racial mixtures. Code the race of the child if different from the adopting parents.

REFERENCE DATES--(D3-19) The dates referred to in the probe questions.

2 week--The 2 weeks (14 days) ending the Sunday night before the interview.

12 month--The 12 months ending the Sunday night before the inter-

view, and beginning with that Sunday's date a year ago.

Hospital--The period ending the Sunday night before the interview and beginning a year previous to the first of the month preceding the month in which Monday of interview weeks falls.

REGULAR SCHOOL--(D10-7) A "regular" school advances a person toward an elementary or high school diploma or a college, university, or professional school degree. Persons are given formal education in graded public or private schools, whether day or night schools, and whether attendance was full-time or part-time.

RELATED--(D3-1) Related by blood, marriage, or adoption.

RETAIL--(D10-15) Sells primarily to individual consumers or users. Establishments such as laundries, render services to individuals and to organizations. Report as retail but also show the type of services provided, e.g., TV and radio repair.

RETIRED--(D3-41) A person reported as retired even if he is under 45. If reported as unable to work or something else, classify as reported rather than retired.

SALES FROM THIS PLACE--(D2-9) The gross amount received for the sale of crops, vegetables, fruits, nuts, livestock and livestock products (milk, wool, etc.), poultry and eggs, nursery and forest products produced on this "place." This refers to the gross sales made from the "place" during the past 12 months.

SAMPLE--The entire group of living quarters assigned for interviewing in any one quarter of a year; it represents all households in the United States. Each sample is assigned a three-digit number called a sample designation. The first two

HIS-100
(1978)

digits of the sample designation identifies the year and the last digit identifies the quarter in which the sample is interviewed; for example, 781 identifies 1978, 1st quarter. Generally a sample household is not interviewed more than once in the HIS survey.

SCHOOL LOSS DAY--(D3-23) When more than half of the scheduled school hours for persons 6-16 years old were lost due to an illness or injury.

SCHOOL, PLACE OF ACCIDENT--(D4-37) Either in the school building or on the premises (campus). Include all types of schools, elementary, high schools, colleges, business schools, etc.

SELF-EMPLOYED--(D10-30) Persons working for profit or fees in OWN business, farm, shop, office, etc. Include persons who have their own tools or equipment and provide services on a contract, subcontract or job basis.

SEPARATED(MARITAL STATUS)--(D3-20) Married persons who have a legal separation or who have parted because they do not get along with each other.

SOMETHING ELSE, 6-16--(D3-42) Usual activity for the past 12 months of persons aged 6-16 years who are not working, keeping house, or going to school.

SOMETHING ELSE, 17+--(D3-41) Usual activity for the past 12 months of persons aged 17 years or older who are not retired, working, keeping house, or going to school. Include persons recently discharged from the Armed Services but not retired.

SPECIALIST--(See Doctor, Kind.)

STREET AND HIGHWAY--(D4-36) The entire width between property lines of which any part is open for use of the public as a matter of right or custom including shoulder or curb. Public sidewalks are part of the street but private driveways, private lanes, private alleys and private sidewalks are not considered part of the street.

TELEPHONE (DOCTOR VISIT)--(D5-5) A telephone call made to or from a doctor or doctor's office which relates to treatment or advice given by a doctor directly or transmitted through a nurse.

THINGS HE USUALLY DOES--(See Usual Activities.)

USUAL ACTIVITIES--(D3-25) For school children and most adults, this would be going to school, working, keeping house, etc. For children under school age, usual activities depend upon whatever the usual pattern is for the child.

USUAL PLACE OF RESIDENCE--(D3-8) The place where a person usually sleeps. A usual place of residence must be specific living quarters held for the person to which he is free to return at any time. A mail address alone does not constitute a usual place of residence.

Living quarters which a person rents to or lends to someone else cannot be considered his usual place of residence during the time they are occupied by someone else. Likewise, vacant living quarters (sometimes furnished) which a person offers for

rent or sale during his absence should not be considered his usual place of residence while he is away.

Persons with no usual place of residence elsewhere include migrants, persons trying to find permanent living quarters and other persons who are staying temporarily in the unit and do not have a home of their own.

VETERAN--(D10-2) A person who has served on full-time active duty in the U.S. Armed Forces.

Vietnam Era--August 1964 to April, 1975.

Korean War--June 1950 to January 1955.

World War II--September 1940 to July 1947.

World War I--April 1917 to November 1918.

Post Vietnam (May 1975 to present)

Other Service--A period of service, none of which was during World War I or II, the Korean War or the Vietnam Era.

VOLUNTEERED CONDITION--(D3-18)
A condition reported while asking questions on the Probe pages not designed to pick up conditions. Enter in item C2 any volunteered

condition which meets the definition in paragraph a) on page D3-18.

WHOLESALE--(D10-15) Buys products in large quantities for resale to retailers, industrial users, or other wholesalers.

WORK--(D10-11) Paid work as an employee for someone else for wages, salary commission or pay "in kind" (meals, living quarters, or supplies provided in place of cash wages). Also include work in the person's own business, professional practice, or farm and work without pay in a business or farm run by a related household member.

Exclude work around the house, volunteer unpaid work such as for church, Red Cross, or charity, and service in the Armed Forces.

ACCIDENT AT--(D4-37) The person was on duty at the time of the accident. A salesman traveling from town to town would be "at work" if an injury occurred en route between towns, but a person on his way to an office job who had an accident en route would not be considered as having been injured "at work."

WORK LOSS DAY--(D3-23) When more than half of the day was lost due to an illness or injury.